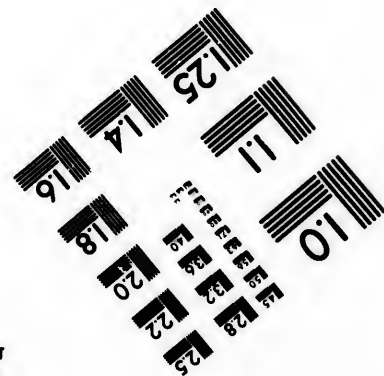
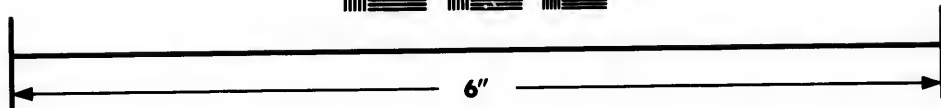
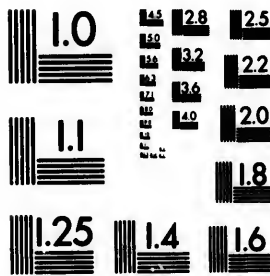


**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503

13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25

**CIHM/ICMH  
Microfiche  
Series.**

**CIHM/ICMH  
Collection de  
microfiches.**



Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques

ii  
iii  
101  
102  
103  
104  
105

**© 1982**

Technical and Bibliographic Notes/Notes techniques et bibliographiques

The Institute has attempted to obtain the best original copy available for filming. Features of this copy which may be bibliographically unique, which may alter any of the images in the reproduction, or which may significantly change the usual method of filming, are checked below.

L'institut a microfilmé le meilleur exemplaire qu'il lui a été possible de se procurer. Les détails de cet exemplaire qui sont peut-être uniques du point de vue bibliographique, qui peuvent modifier une image reproduite, ou qui peuvent exiger une modification dans la méthode normale de filmage sont indiqués ci-dessous.

- Coloured covers/  
Couverture de couleur
- Covers damaged/  
Couverture endommagée
- Covers restored and/or laminated/  
Couverture restaurée et/ou pelliculée
- Cover title missing/  
Le titre de couverture manque
- Coloured maps/  
Cartes géographiques en couleur
- Coloured ink (i.e. other than blue or black)/  
Encre de couleur (i.e. autre que bleue ou noire)
- Coloured plates and/or illustrations/  
Planches et/ou illustrations en couleur
- Bound with other material/  
Relié avec d'autres documents
- Tight binding may cause shadows or distortion along interior margin/  
La reliure serrée peut causer de l'ombre ou de la distorsion le long de la marge intérieure
- Blank leaves added during restoration may appear within the text. Whenever possible, these have been omitted from filming/  
Il se peut que certaines pages blanches ajoutées lors d'une restauration apparaissent dans le texte, mais, lorsque cela était possible, ces pages n'ont pas été filmées.
- Additional comments:  
Commentaires supplémentaires:

- Coloured pages/  
Pages de couleur
- Pages damaged/  
Pages endommagées
- Pages restored and/or laminated/  
Pages restaurées et/ou pelliculées
- Pages discoloured, stained or foxed/  
Pages décolorées, tachetées ou piquées
- Pages detached/  
Pages détachées
- Showthrough/  
Transparence
- Quality of print varies/  
Qualité inégale de l'impression
- Includes supplementary material/  
Comprend du matériel supplémentaire
- Only edition available/  
Seule édition disponible
- Pages wholly or partially obscured by errata slips, tissues, etc., have been refilmed to ensure the best possible image/  
Les pages totalement ou partiellement obscurcies par un feuillet d'errata, une pelure, etc., ont été filmées à nouveau de façon à obtenir la meilleure image possible.

This item is filmed at the reduction ratio checked below/  
Ce document est filmé au taux de réduction indiqué ci-dessous.

10X	14X	18X	22X	26X	30X
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
12X	16X	20X	24X	28X	32X

The copy filmed here has been reproduced thanks to the generosity of:

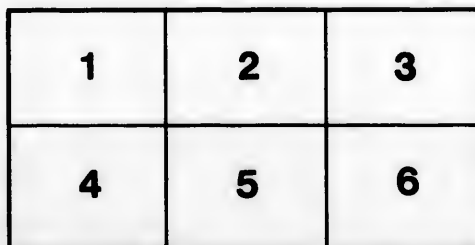
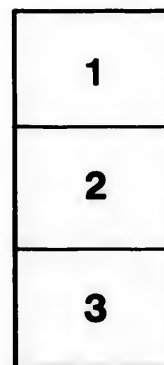
Library of the Public  
Archives of Canada

The images appearing here are the best quality possible considering the condition and legibility of the original copy and in keeping with the filming contract specifications.

Original copies in printed paper covers are filmed beginning with the front cover and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression, or the back cover when appropriate. All other original copies are filmed beginning on the first page with a printed or illustrated impression, and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression.

The last recorded frame on each microfiche shall contain the symbol  $\rightarrow$  (meaning "CONTINUED"), or the symbol  $\nabla$  (meaning "END"), whichever applies.

Maps, plates, charts, etc., may be filmed at different reduction ratios. Those too large to be entirely included in one exposure are filmed beginning in the upper left hand corner, left to right and top to bottom, as many frames as required. The following diagrams illustrate the method:



L'exemplaire filmé fut reproduit grâce à la générosité de:

La bibliothèque des Archives  
publiques du Canada

Les images suivantes ont été reproduites avec le plus grand soin, compte tenu de la condition et de la netteté de l'exemplaire filmé, et en conformité avec les conditions du contrat de filmage.

Les exemplaires originaux dont la couverture en papier est imprimée sont filmés en commençant par le premier plat et en terminant soit par la dernière page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration, soit par le second plat, selon le cas. Tous les autres exemplaires originaux sont filmés en commençant par la première page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration et en terminant par la dernière page qui comporte une telle empreinte.

Un des symboles suivants apparaîtra sur la dernière image de chaque microfiche, selon le cas: le symbole  $\rightarrow$  signifie "A SUIVRE", le symbole  $\nabla$  signifie "FIN".

Les cartes, planches, tableaux, etc., peuvent être filmés à des taux de réduction différents. Lorsque le document est trop grand pour être reproduit en un seul cliché, il est filmé à partir de l'angle supérieur gauche, de gauche à droite, et de haut en bas, en prenant le nombre d'images nécessaire. Les diagrammes suivants illustrent la méthode.



NOI

THE  
**DISCOVERY OF AMERICA,**  
BY  
CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS;  
AND THE  
ORIGIN  
OF THE  
NORTH AMERICAN INDIANS.

---

By J. MACKINTOSH.

---

TORONTO:

PRINTED BY W. J. COATES, KING STREET.

---

1836.

1-1516

WHEN  
which  
remote  
affecte  
state a  
A  
man sp  
and in  
enjoym  
men, w  
but thei  
so adve  
once str  
of consu  
laid ope  
travell  
frame a  
races of  
the hum  
sities of  
But h  
by man  
of body,  
human fr  
species,  
being de  
On dis  
and feat  
to attribu  
volution  
history, v  
mankind  
in that co  
gris, some

## INTRODUCTION.

WHEN we take even a superficial view of the surface of the globe which we inhabit, we evidently perceive, that at some unknown remote periods, various revolutions have happened, which not only affected materially the superficial structure of the earth, but the state and condition of its inhabitants.

Although we may fairly boast of the pre-eminence of the human species over all other animals in arts of ingenious contrivance, and in mental capacities, which elevate our hopes beyond terrestrial enjoyments, yet we find the earth inhabited by different races of men, who do not only vary in complexion, manners, and customs, but their rules of conduct, sentiments, and opinions, are apparently so adverse and inconsistent, that the minds of the curious are at once struck with a degree of surprise that naturally excites a desire of consulting those extensive sources of information which have been laid open to the Antiquarian by the travels and researches of modern travellers. The intellectual faculties of man, as well as his bodily frame and complexion, exhibit so various an aspect among different races of mankind, as would seem to authorise an arrangement of the human species into different classes, marked by specific diversities of powers, both mental and corporeal.

But how much soever the human race may seem to be diversified, by manners and customs, opinions and sentiments, shape and size of body, colour, complexion, or tinge of skin, the organization of the human frame, in all the regions of the earth, prove an uniformity of species, which excludes not the possibility of the whole human race being descended from one original pair.

On discovering, therefore, such a contrariety in the bodily frame and features of man as well as in his mental capacities, we are led to attribute this diversity in the human species, to that general revolution which happened at the confusion of Babel. From sacred history, we are assured, that for several centuries after the deluge, mankind continued together and composed only one nation, seated in that country, which was watered by the river Euphrates and Tigris, sometimes called in general Syria, but more particularly dis-

tinguished by the several names of *Armenia, Assyria and Chaldea*. Being the children of one family (of Noah and his sons,) notwithstanding the early difference, which appeared betwixt Cham and his two brothers, their language was the same; and doubtless their religion, customs and manners could not be very different as long as they continued together; and together they continued till vainly presuming to build a city and a tower whose top should reach even heaven and defeat the decrees of the Almighty, God thought proper to confound all such airy schemes, by miraculously introducing different languages, or at least different dialects of the former universal language. By this confusion those who spoke the same dialect, consorted together and separated themselves from those whose speech they no longer could understand. Thus was mankind reduced to the necessity of forming as many different parties as they had languages among them.

As those different tribes dispersed themselves into many countries and had no intercourse with each other, it was necessary that the essentials of their religion, manners and customs, should also undergo a change. This was actually the case, for mankind, immediately after the confusion of tongues, was split into seventy-two distinct nations, speaking seventy-two different dialects, while they adopted modes of living quite different from those which they practised when they lived together in the Plains of Shinar.

As they increased and multiplied in the different countries which they inhabited, several bodies were sent out to seek their fortune in strange lands, where they made settlements, when they found that they were fine and delightful countries, which promised them great felicity. Others by reason of civil and domestic quarrels, were driven abroad and passed into distant regions far beyond the encroachments of an enemy.

Thus they spread themselves over almost the greater part of Asia; but their roving and wandering disposition was not yet satisfied, until by continued migrations, they had extended their discoveries to Africa, Europe, and America.

In the present object of enquiry, by which we shall endeavour to prove the Asiatic origin of the North American Indians, we do not mean to resort to oral tradition, which, prior to the invention of letters was the erroneous vehicle of knowledge.

This mode of information which was liable to be disguised by

the embellishment of fancy, the effusions of the warm imaginations of poets, by the vanity of descent from an illustrious ancestry, and by the variety which in the first ages influenced the human mind and produced those traditionary fables, in which the earliest accounts of nations as given by themselves are universally found to be involved.

As it is generally allowed that the agreement of the manners and customs of two nations, is the most authentic monument of their original connection, we have offered an extensive catalogue of coincidences so singular and indicative of the identity of people, that we will at once be induced to believe the Asiatic origin of the North American Indians. If we meet, therefore, with many customs, religious, military and civil, practised only by some nations in Asia and followed up by the earliest inhabitants of the western continent, we may fairly conclude that the North American Indians and those Asiatic nations to whom they bear the greatest resemblance in bodily frame and intellectual faculties, were once united and lived together as the children of the same parents.

*Chaldea.*  
 notwithstanding  
 and his  
 their re-  
 as long as  
 till vainly  
 each even  
 light proper  
 introducing  
 former uni-  
 the same  
 from those  
 as mankind  
 parties as  
  
 many coun-  
 cessary that  
 should also  
 unkind, im-  
 twenty-two  
 while they  
 they prac-  
  
 countries  
 k their for-  
 when they  
 h promised  
 nestic quar-  
 far beyond  
  
 ater part of  
 ot yet satis-  
 ed their dis-  
  
 l endeavour  
 ans, we do  
 invention of  
  
 disguised by

Discov

ORIGIN  
Person  
Person  
Particu  
Religio  
Religio  
Dress a  
Dress a  
Marria  
Marria  
War an  
War an  
of  
The Da  
The Da  
Sacrific  
Sacrific  
Funera  
Funera  
Festiva  
Festiva  
Game o  
Game o  
The Na  
The Na  
Jugglers  
The Po  
Orators  
Orators  
The ( o  
Ind  
Councils  
Shapes  
What St  
Their fin  
In what  
Works o  
Works o  
Their Te  
The For  
Their Ne  
Their Ve  
Their Ve  
Their Fa  
Their Th  
Of the  
An India  
America  
The Mo  
Nort

# CONTENTS.

	Page.
DISCOVERY OF AMERICA.....	9
<hr style="width: 10%; margin: 10px auto;"/>	
ORIGIN OF THE NORTH AMERICAN INDIANS.....	33
Persons, Features, and Colour of the North American Indians.....	39
Persons, Features, and Complexion of the Tongusi of Siberia, in Asia...	42
Particularities of the Indian Language.....	43
Particularities of the Languages of the Tongusi and Coriaks of Siberia	46
Religion of the North American Indians.....	47
Religion of the Tongusi, Coriaks, and Kamschadales.....	50
Dress and Ornaments of the North American Indians.....	52
Dress and Ornaments of the Tongusi, Coriaks, and Kamschadales.....	55
Marriage among the North American Indians.....	57
Marriage among the Tongusi, Coriaks, and Kamschadales.....	63
War among the North American Indians.....	65
War among the Tongusi, Coriaks, Kamschadales, Yakutsi, and Okotsi of Siberia.....	79
The Dance of the Calumet among the North American Indians.....	83
The Dance of the Potoosi, or Calumet among the Tongusi, &c.....	85
Sacrifices among the North American Indians.....	86
Sacrifices among the Tongusi.....	87
Funeral Rites among the North American Indians.....	88
Funeral Rites among the Coriaks, Tongusi, and Kamschadales.....	92
Festival of Dreams among the North American Indians.....	93
Festival of Dreams among the Tongusi, Coriaks, and Kamschadales....	96
Game of the Dish, or Little Bones among the North American Indians..	97
Game of the Patooni among the Kamschadales.....	99
The Naming of Children among the North American Indians.....	ib.
The Naming of Children among the Kamschadales.....	100
Jugglers among the North American Indians.....	101
The Ponomoosi, or Prophets among the Kamschadales, Coriaks, &c.....	102
Orators among the North American Indians.....	103
Orators among several Asiatic Tribes.....	110
The Councils and Government of Villages among the North American Indians.....	111
Councils and Government among Asiatic Tribes.....	113
Shapes which the North American Indians give to their Children.....	114
What Strengthens and Shapes the Indians so well.....	ib.
Their first Exercises.....	115
In what consist their Education.....	ib.
Works of the Women.....	ib.
Works of the Men.....	116
Their Tools.....	ib.
The Form of their Villages.....	ib.
Their Notion of the Origin of Man.....	117
Their Vestals.....	ib.
Their Vows.....	ib.
Their Fasts.....	ib.
Their Thoughts on the Immortality of the Soul.....	118
Of the Country of Souls.....	ib.
An Indians Chief's Account of the Origin of the N. American Indians,	119
America Peopled by a more Civilized Race than the present Red Indians,	131
The Mexicans are the Remains of a more Polished Nation than the North American Indians.....	136



In tr  
it ma  
rema  
claim  
arriv  
impe  
canno  
which  
Draw  
well a  
figure  
with  
eviden  
at tha  
globe.  
wisdo  
that th  
by an  
habita  
that th  
a prop  
these  
exister  
been k  
believ  
vation  
opinion  
vered

T  
suppor  
Siculus  
of Jul

"  
" *culis*  
" *Ocea*  
" *jacta*  
" *comp*  
" *venis*  
" *tuosa*  
" *haru*  
" *cum*

## DISCOVERY OF AMERICA.

IN tracing the origin of the primitive inhabitants of America, it may not, perhaps, be improper to offer a few preliminary remarks on the discovery of the New World, as several nations claim the honor of having visited this Continent previous to the arrival of Christopher Columbus. That the ancients had an imperfect notion of the existence of this quarter of the globe, cannot be doubted, when we consider the very early period at which the sciences of Geometry, Cosmography, Astronomy, and Drawing, were studied in the schools of Greece and Rome, as well as in Egypt and Carthage. In those days, the spherical figure of the earth was known, and its magnitude ascertained with considerable accuracy. From such a knowledge it was evident, that Europe, Asia and Africa, as far as they were known at that time, formed but a small portion of the terraqueous globe. It was also suitable to the ideas of man, concerning the wisdom and beneficence of the Author of Nature, to believe that the vast space still unexplored, was not covered entirely by an unprofitable ocean, but occupied by countries fit for the habitation of man. It appeared likewise extremely probable, that the continents on one side of the globe were balanced by a proportional quantity of land in the other hemisphere. From these conclusions, arising solely from theoretical principles, the existence of the western continent might, very probably, have been known to the ancients. Although we have no reason to believe that they ever ventured to explore it by practical observation; yet there are some historians who seem to favor the opinion that the Carthaginians, the Welsh and Norwegians discovered the American continent at a very early period.

Those who contend for the Carthaginians, have no other support, except the following obscure passage from Diodorus Siculus, a Sicilian historian and a stoic philosopher, in the time of Julius Cæsar.

*“ Phœnices vetustissimis temporibus extra columnas Herculis navigantes ingentibus ventorum procellis ad longinquos Oceani tractus fuisse abreptos, ac multis diebus vi tempestatis jactatos, tandem ad ingentem insulam in Oceano Atlantico, complurium dierum navigatione a Lybia in occasum remotam venisse; cujus solum fructiferum, amnes navigabiles, sumptuosa aedificia fuerint. Inde Carthaginenses et Tyrrhenos harum terrarum notitiam accepisse. Postea Carthaginenses, cum saepe a Tyriis et Mauritanis bello premerentur, Gadibus*

*"praeter navigatis, et Atlantico provectos oceano, tandem ad  
 "novas has regiones appulisse, et coloniam duxisse; eamque  
 "rem diu tacitum servasse, ut si rursus sedibus ejicerentur,  
 "haberent locum in quem se cum suis reciperent.—Repertam a  
 "Carthaginiensibus fortuito insulam; et in eam injussu Ma-  
 "gistratus commigrasse plurimos: quod disfluente paulatim  
 "populo coeperit postea Capitale esse."*

Here we are told by Diodorus, that the Phœnicians were, at a very early period, driven by the violence of the winds far beyond the pillars of Hercules or the Straits of Gibraltar, into the ocean: That they discovered to the west of Lybia or Africa, at the distance of a few days sailing from that continent, a large and fertile island and finely watered with navigable rivers; That this discovery was soon made known to the Carthaginians, a Phœnician colony in Africa, and to the Tyrrhennians or Tus-cans in Italy: That the Carthaginians some time after, under-took, on account of hostile invasions made by the Moors and Tyrians, a voyage in which they passed the straits of Gibralt-ar and advanced beyond Cadiz without the pillars of Hercules, till they arrived in those new regions, where they made a set-tlement; but the policy of Carthage dislodged the colony, and laid a strict prohibition on all the subjects of the State not to attempt any future establishment.

It is truly surprising that historians of considerable renown should have mistaken the American continent for the fertile and beautiful island which is mentioned in this passage from Dio-dorus. This geographical sketch of the new country which the Phœnicians discovered, and the Carthaginians afterwards colon-ized, corresponds in every respect with the situation and fertility of Ireland, being distant only a few days sailing from the straits of Gibraltar, while few countries can surpass it in beauty. Ire-land is also supplied with navigable rivers. In the researches of eminent antiquarians, we are taught to believe beyond the possibility of a doubt, that the Phœnicians were about the first of the human race that visited Ireland, where they established a colony. The chronicles of Ireland bear testimony to this fact; and when we collate the Irish language with the Punic or Phœnician, we find so striking an affinity, that the Irish or Cel-tic language may be said to have been, in a great degree, the language of Hannibal, Hamilcar, and Asdrubal. This opinion will at once be confirmed by having recourse to Plautus, where we see a Carthaginian speaking the Punic, which is no other than almost the pure Celtic or Irish language. In a forthcom-ing work, however, to be entitled "The Origin of the Primitive Inhabitants of Great Britain and Ireland," we have proved this point so clearly, that to doubt it would be denying the most glaring truth.

passa  
 beyon  
 island  
 settle  
 comp  
 begin  
 same  
 yond  
 theref  
 the sig  
 seas,  
 they n  
 and en  
 terpris  
 minds  
 sage,  
 the lar  
 seeing  
 which  
 his nob  
 when v  
 and lai  
 to atte  
 of poli  
 ous sta  
 ritories  
 bed in  
 Hercul  
 exists  
 custom  
 Were v  
 prior to  
 very ex  
 globe, s  
 some of  
 for in S  
 less sur  
 tempted  
 America  
 was disc  
 support,  
 dorus, v  
 To  
 tius, a lea  
 gentium  
 lished, a

“The Phœnicians,” says Diodorus in the first part of the passage which we have transcribed, “after a few days sailing beyond the pillars of Hercules, discovered a large and fertile island in the ocean; and its beauty induced the discoverers to settle there.” It is certain that the invention of the Mariner’s compass cannot be dated from a much earlier period, than the beginning of the 14th century; and that towards the close of the same century, the navigation of Europe was not extended beyond the limits of the Mediterranean. It is not reasonable, therefore, to think that the Carthaginians should venture from the sight of land and stretch out into unfrequented and unknown seas, without the help of this sure guide, however prompted they might have been by the most ardent spirit of discovery, and encouraged by the patronage of princes. Such a bold enterprise is not at all congenial to the cautious and timorous minds of the ancient navigators. We see also in the same passage, that they performed their voyage in a few days, so that the land which they discovered could not have been America, seeing that Columbus, the most skilful navigator of the age in which he lived, consumed seventy-one days in accomplishing his noble undertaking. The second part is no less inconsistent, when we learn that the policy of Carthage dislodged the colony and laid a strict prohibition on all the subjects of the State not to attempt any future establishment. This is certainly a line of policy, which could not have been pursued by any ambitious state, that wished to extend its power and enlarge its territories, by the discovery of so valuable an island as is described in Diodorus; and at so short a distance from the pillars of Hercules. It has never been satisfactorily proved, that there exists in America any tribe, whose language, manners and customs bear any resemblance to those of the Carthaginians. Were we even to grant, that the Carthaginians visited America prior to the discovery of Columbus, it would certainly appear very extraordinary, that the existence of this portion of the globe, should not have been revealed by the Carthaginians to some of their neighbouring nations, especially to the Spaniards; for in Spain the Carthaginians founded several cities. It is no less surprising that the Carthaginians themselves had never attempted, at a future period, to make a second settlement in America. The opinion, therefore, that the western continent was discovered by the Carthaginians, seems to have no other support, except the passage which we have quoted from Diodorus, who undoubtedly must have been alluding to Ireland.

To confirm us in our opinion, we shall here attend to Vesputius, a learned latin author, who made able researches, *de origine gentium*. His manuscripts, which have not as yet been published, are still preserved in the Vatican library at Rome.—

"*Extra columnas Herculis quam vastissimus est oceanus, in quo sitæ sunt insulæ duæ quæ Albion, et Ierna appellantur. Ex Gallia sæpenumero colonos acceperunt, quamobrem lingua Gallica aut Celtica incolæ loqui dicuntur. Illic, neque dubitari potest, quin Carthaginenses coloniam olim miserint, lingua enim Punica quam simillima est eorum sermoni.*" This learned antiquarian contends that *Albion* and *Erin*, which are situated, according to him, in a vast ocean without the pillars of Hercules, received colonies not only from Gaul, as their inhabitants speak the language of the Gauls, but that the Phœnicians also contributed at some remote period to the colonization of these two islands, on account of the affinity between the Celtic and the Phœnician languages.

Vesputius is supported by Monsieur Boulet, a French etymologist, in his *Mem. sur la langue Celtique*: *La langue Celtique étant de la plus haute antiquité (says Boulet) n'étant même, ainsi qu'on l'a prouvé, qu'un dialecte de la primitive, elle a du être la mère de celles qui se sont formées par la succession des temps dans les pays qu'ont occupés les Celtes, ou Celto-Scythes. Le Latin, le Gothique, l'Anglo-Saxon, le Theuton, l'Islandois, le Pruniqué, le Suedois, le Danois, l'Allemand, l'Anglois, l'Italien, l'Espagnol, le François, ayent été formés immédiatement, ou médiatement, en tout, ou en partie, du Celtique, on doit regarder cet ouvrage comme un dictionnaire étimologique de ces langues dans lequel on trouvera l'origine des termes qui les composent. Il-y-a encore tant de similitude entre la langue Celtique et la langue Carthaginoise, qu'on doit regarder les Irlandois et les Carthaginois comme deux nations de la même origine.*

The learned *Boulet* says, that the Celtic language is so ancient; that it is, as has been often proved, no less than a dialect of that language which was first spoken in paradise; and that it must be the mother of all those languages which had been formed in those Countries which were formerly occupied by the Celts or Celto-Scythians. Therefore he concludes, that the Latin, the Gothic the Anglo-Saxon, the Teutonic, the Islandic, the Prunic, the Swedish, the Danish, the German, the English, the Italian, the Spanish, & French languages must have been derived directly or indirectly from the Celtic, which is no other than etymological dictionary of the terms of which those several languages are composed. There is also, he continues, such a similarity between the Celtic and the Carthaginian language, that the Irish and Carthaginians are to be considered as two nations of the same origin. We could offer the testimony of several other learned men who are not only convinced that the Carthaginians visited and colonized Ireland prior to the arrival of any other colony, but are also of opinion that *Diodorus Siculus* alludes to Ireland, while he describes that fertile island which

the C  
we d  
origin  
conn  
ginia  
try w  
in the  
accou  
some  
from  
dalusi  
in Ire  
T  
buted,  
Mado  
his fa  
All tha  
from c  
he had  
plimen  
They p  
left Ire  
where  
and ma  
country  
to acc  
returne  
do not  
Welsh  
mian,  
more b  
formed

Th  
ent fam  
posterit  
chies, a  
mory, t  
ty. Bu  
besides,  
and sub

the Carthaginians discovered beyond the pillars of Hercules. As we do not however intend, on the present occasion, to trace the origin of the Irish nation, but merely to shew from the national connexion which evidently exists between the Irish and Carthaginians, that Ireland must, and undoubtedly, be that country which the Carthaginians, according to Diodorus, discovered in the Atlantic ocean. The most reasonable mode, therefore, of accounting for this ancient consanguinity is to conclude that at some remote period the Carthaginians, after a few days sailing from Cadiz, a town which was built by the Phœnicians in Andalusia, a province in the south of Spain, arrived fortuitously in Ireland, where they made settlements.

The Welsh also fondly imagine, that their country contributed, in 1170, to people the new world, by the adventures of Madoc, son of Owen Guynedd, who, they say, on the death of his father, sailed there, and colonized a part of the country. All that is advanced in proof of this discovery, is a quotation from one of the British poets, who proves no more, than that he had distinguished himself both by sea and land. This compliment was immediately perverted by the Welsh Bards.— They pretend that he made two voyages; that sailing west, he left Ireland so far to the north, that he came to a land unknown, where he saw many strange things; that on returning home, and making a report of the fruitfulness of the new discovered country, he prevailed on numbers of the Welsh of each sex, to accompany him on a second voyage, from which he never returned. Without commenting on these assertions, for they do not wear the visage of truth, we need only enquire who the Welsh Bards were. It is clearly stated by Strabo and Ammian, what they were, anciently, in their day; but Lucan has more briefly, and distinctly enough for the present purpose, informed us in the following verses:

Vos quoque, qui fortes animas, belloque peremptas,  
Laudibus in longum vates demittis ævum,  
Plurima securi fudistis carmina Bardi.

The brave who fell in war, ye poets, praise  
In strains that shall descend to distant times,  
And spread their fame, ye Bards, in many songs.

The Bards, therefore, were retained by the chiefs of ancient families, as minstrels who, by their songs, perpetuated to posterity, the memory of their patrons. Next come the Senachies, another description of minstrels, who recited, from memory, the genealogies of their chiefs and other men of property. But these too, were generally destitute of learning, and, besides, no reliance could be placed on men whose expectations and subsistence depended on adulation. If, to this be added,



as it often must, that national partiality which usually perverted their judgment, who would venture to affirm upon their testimony, either what is true or what is false, or seek for certainty among such uncertain authorities. The Welsh, then, have no other testimony except the fabulous relations of Bards and Senachies; and as such, were ever liable to delusion and error, their claim must ever be pronounced, as entirely destitute of support. Besides the Welsh were never known as a people, who were skilful in naval affairs, and even the age in which Madoc lived, was particularly ignorant in navigation; so that the most which they attempted, could not have been more than a mere coasting voyage.

The Norwegians claim their share of the glory, on grounds rather better than the Welsh. By their settlements in Iceland and Greenland, they had arrived within so small a distance of the new world, that there is at least a possibility of its having been touched at by a people so versed in maritime affairs, and so adventurous, as the ancient Normans were. The proofs are much more numerous than those produced by British historians, for the discovery is mentioned in several Islandic manuscripts.

The period was about the year 1002, when according to their own records, it was visited by one Biorn; and the discovery pursued to greater effect by Leif, the son of Eric, the discoverer of Greenland. It does not appear that they reached farther than Labrador; on which coast they met with the *Esquimaux*, on whom they bestowed the name of *Skraelingues*, or dwarfish people, from their small stature. They were armed with bows and arrows, and had leathern canoes, such as they have at present. All this is probable, although the following tale of the German, called Tuckil, one of the crew, does not tend to prove the discovery. He was one day missing; but soon returned, leaping and singing with all the extravagant marks of joy a *bon vivant* could shew, on discovering the inebriating fruit of his own country, the grape; Torfæus even says, that he returned in a state of intoxication. To convince his commander, he brought several branches of grapes, who from that circumstance named that country *Vinland*. It is not to be denied, that North America produces the true vine; but it is found in far lower latitudes than our adventurers could reach in the time employed in their voyages, which was comprehended in a very small space. However, be this as it may, there appears no reason to doubt the discovery; but as the land was never colonized, nor any advantages made of it by the Norwegians, it may fairly be conjectured, that they reached no farther than the coast of *Labrador*. In short it is from a much later period; that we must date the real discovery of America.

The mariners of the seventeenth century acquired great

appla  
some  
were  
their i  
farthe  
T  
broug  
terran  
to find  
of Afri  
engage  
Portug  
Europ  
and see  
howev  
years'  
the eq  
elapse  
Colum  
sign no  
neficial  
Ar  
made by  
topher  
It  
a biogra  
not know  
historian  
"C  
no Mi  
rinaro  
condot  
Africa  
medesi  
vigazi  
nuovi  
Acc  
Christop  
and four  
of Portu  
ent of h  
small G  
ge of di  
ond son  
is father  
ustry an  
aly lang

applause by sailing along the coast of Africa and discovering some of the neighboring islands; and although the Portuguese were decidedly the most skilful navigators of the age, still with all their industry and perseverance, they advanced southward no farther than the equator.

The rich commodities of the east had for several ages been brought into Europe by the way of the Red Sea and the Mediterranean; and it had now become the object of the Portuguese to find a passage to India by sailing round the southern extremity of Africa, and then taking an eastern course. This great object engaged the general attention of mankind, and drew into the Portuguese service adventurers from every maritime nation in Europe. Every year added to their experience in navigation, and seemed to promise a reward to their industry. The prospect, however, of arriving at the Indies was extremely distant. Fifty years' perseverance in the same track had brought them only to the equator; and it was probable that as many more would elapse before they could accomplish their purpose, had not *Columbus*, by an uncommon exertion of genius, formed a design no less astonishing to the age in which he lived, than beneficial to posterity.

Among the foreigners whom the fame of the discoveries made by the Portuguese had allured into their service was Christopher Columbus or Colon, a subject of the republic of Genoa.

It has been generally asserted by those who have given us a biographical sketch of Columbus, that the place of his birth is not known with certainty; but Father Lerafini, a learned Italian historian, speaks as follows, of the famous navigator.

*"Cristofero Columbus era nato nella città di Genova, l'anno Millequattro cento e cinquanta due. Il suo padre, un marinaio Portoghese, era nominato di comun consenso, per condottiere principale in un viaggio di scoperta sulla costa Africana. Cristofero il secondo figlio, volendo seguire la medesima occupazione, cominciò a studiare le lingue, la navigazione, e le altre scienze che erano necessarie per scoprire nuovi paesi."*

According to Lerafini, who was also a Genoese by birth, Christopher Columbus was born in Genoa, in the year one thousand four hundred and forty-two. His father, he says, a native of Portugal, was so skilful a mariner, that by the common consent of his followers he was appointed to the chief command of a small Genoese squadron, which had been fitted out for a voyage of discovery on the coast of Africa. Christopher, the second son, wishing to pursue the same course of life, to which his father had been trained, applied himself with the greatest industry and perseverance to the study of the Latin tongue, the only language in which science was taught at that time: he was



also instructed in all those branches, which are connected with navigation, such as Geometry, Cosmography, Astronomy, and the art of Drawing. Thus qualified, he went to sea at the age of fourteen, and began his career on that element, which conducted him to so much glory, and proved so interesting to mankind in general and to the inhabitants of Europe in particular.

As his early voyages were confined to those ports in the Mediterranean, which were frequented by his countrymen the Genoese, his active mind, could not be satisfied, until he had made an excursion to the northern seas and visited the coasts of Iceland, to which the English and other nations had begun to resort on account of its fisheries. The fame which was now acquired in navigation, excited such emulation among the more enterprising mariners, that Columbus ventured to proceed several degrees within the polar circle and advanced beyond that island, which is called the Thule of the ancients. Having satisfied his curiosity by this voyage, which tended more to enlarge his knowledge of naval affairs, than to improve his fortune, he entered into the service of a famous sea captain of his own name and family. This man commanded a small squadron, with which he cruised sometimes against the Mahometans, sometimes against the Venetians, the rivals of his country in trade. With him Columbus continued several years, no less distinguished for his courage, than for his experience as a sailor. At length in an obstinate engagement off the coast of Portugal, with some Venetian caravels, returning richly laden from the low countries, the vessel on board which he served took fire together with one of the enemy's ships, to which it was fast grappled. In this dreadful extremity his intrepidity and presence of mind did not forsake him. He threw himself into the sea, laid hold of a floating oar and by the support of it, and his own dexterity in swimming, he reached the shore; though above two leagues distant, and saved a life reserved for great undertakings.

Columbus immediately repaired to the Court of Portugal, where they conceived such a favorable opinion of his merit, as well as talents, that they warmly solicited him to remain in that kingdom. Columbus listened with a favorable ear to the advice of his friends, and having gained the esteem of a Portuguese lady, whom he married, he fixed his residence in Lisbon. As his father-in-law, Bartholomew Perestrello, was one of the captains who were employed by Prince Henry, when the islands of Porto Santo and Madeira were discovered and planted, Columbus got possession of the journals and charts of Perestrello, who was an experienced navigator. The more he contemplated the maps and read the descriptions of the new countries which Perestrello had discovered, the more impatient he became to visit

then  
mad  
to tr  
sett  
gues

the g  
on by  
navig  
ambit  
the P  
and e  
all the  
made,  
and b  
inquis  
of this  
on wh  
very, a  
gradua  
of acc  
in vain

T  
great c  
Portug  
they an  
all the  
fertility  
its spic  
through  
ing from  
of all n  
by the  
in hopes  
and tur  
extremi  
arriving  
convinced  
equator  
tended v  
difficulties  
and mor  
out. Af  
suggested  
practice  
ions of  
authors,

them. In order, therefore, to indulge his favorite passion, he made a voyage to Madeira, and continued during several years to trade with that island, with the Canaries, the Azores, the settlements in Guinea, and all the other places which the Portuguese had discovered on the continent of Africa.

During such a variety of voyages to almost every part of the globe with which, at that time, any intercourse was carried on by sea, Columbus was now become one of the most skilful navigators in Europe. But not satisfied with that praise, his ambition aimed at something more. The successful progress of the Portuguese navigators had awakened a spirit of curiosity and emulation, which set every man of science upon examining all the circumstances that led to the discoveries which they had made, or that afforded a prospect of succeeding in any new and bolder undertaking. The mind of Columbus, naturally inquisitive, capable of deep reflection and turned to speculations of this kind, was so often employed in revolving the principles on which the Portuguese had founded their schemes of discovery, and the mode in which they had carried them on, that he gradually began to form an idea of improving on their plan, and of accomplishing discoveries which hitherto they had attempted in vain.

To find out a passage by sea to the East Indies, was the great object in view at that period. From the time that the Portuguese doubled Cape de Verd, this was the point at which they aimed in all their navigations, and in comparison with it all their discoveries in Africa appeared inconsiderable. The fertility and riches of India had been known for many ages; its spices and other commodities were in high reputation throughout Europe, and the vast wealth of the Venetians arising from their having engrossed this trade, had raised the envy of all nations. More than half a century had been employed by the Portuguese in advancing from Cape Non to the equator, in hopes of arriving at India by steering towards the south and turning to the east, after they had sailed round the farther extremity of Africa. Even although they could succeed in arriving at India by pursuing this course, they were at last convinced that the remaining part of the navigation, from the equator to India was so extensive, that it could not but be attended with uncertainty, danger and tediousness. These difficulties naturally led Columbus to consider whether a shorter and more direct passage to the East Indies might not be found out. After revolving long and seriously every circumstance suggested by his superior knowledge, in the theory as well as practice of navigation, and comparing attentively the observations of modern pilots, with the hints and conjectures of ancient authors, he at last concluded that by sailing directly towards

the west across the Atlantic ocean, new countries which probably formed a part of the great continent of India must infallibly be discovered. Columbus was confirmed in his opinion by the accounts of a certain Portuguese pilot, who having stretched farther to the west than was usual at that time, took up a piece of timber, artificially carved, floating on the sea; and as it was driven towards him by a westerly wind, he concluded that it came from some unknown land situated in that quarter.

Pieces of timber fashioned in the same manner, and floating on the waves were seen by several Portuguese pilots, to the west of the Madeira isles, and thither they were brought by a westerly wind. Canes also of an enormous size had been found, which resembled those described by Ptolemy, as productions peculiar to the East Indies. After a course of westerly winds, trees torn up by the roots, were often driven upon the coasts of Azores, and at one time the dead bodies of two men, with singular features, resembling neither the inhabitants of Europe nor of Africa, were cast ashore there.

As the force of this united evidence, arising from theoretical and practical observations, led Columbus to expect the discovery of new countries in the western ocean, other reasons induced him to believe that these must be connected with the continent of India. Though the ancients had hardly ever penetrated into India farther than the banks of the Ganges, yet some Greek authors had ventured to describe the provinces beyond that river. As men are prone and at liberty to magnify what is remote or unknown, they represented them as regions of an immense extent. Cesias affirmed that India was as large as all the rest of Asia. Onesicritus, whom Pliny the naturalist follows, contended that it was equal to a third part of the inhabitable earth. Nearchus asserted, that it would take four months to march in a straight line from one extremity of India to the other. The journal of Marco Polo, who had proceeded towards the east far beyond the limits to which any European had ever advanced, seemed to confirm these exaggerated accounts of the ancients.

From the magnificent descriptions which Marco Polo gave of Cathay and Cipango, and of many other countries on that continent, it appeared to Columbus that India was a region of vast extent. He concluded, that in proportion as the continent of India stretched out towards the east, it must in consequence of the spherical figure of the earth, approach nearer to the islands which had lately been discovered to the west of Africa; that the distance from the one to the other was probably not very considerable, and that the most direct, as well as the shortest course, to the remote regions of the east, was to be

four  
opin  
cien  
upon  
he co  
ble o  
prod  
and  
Flora  
conce  
sailin  
the p  
an un  
to the  
tient  
try sh  
before  
their  
chara  
long i  
meric  
to his  
blishe  
made  
the P  
expect  
ception  
sonal  
John v  
petent  
gracio  
Diego  
eminer  
in mat  
prejudi  
the Ge  
that th  
founde  
whose  
Portug  
gations  
be arr  
which  
they co  
the dou  
of ack  
given s

found by sailing due west. Although he was supported in this opinion by some of the most eminent writers among the ancients, still, not wishing to rest with absolute assurance, either upon his own arguments or upon the authority of the ancients, he consulted such of his contemporaries as he considered capable of comprehending the nature of the evidence which he had produced. At that time, as the most distinguished astronomer and cosmographer was one Paul, an eminent physician of Florence, Columbus failed not to communicate to him his ideas concerning the probability of discovering new countries by sailing westward. The learned physician highly approved of the plan, and exhorted Columbus to persevere in so laudable an undertaking. Columbus being fully satisfied with respect to the truth of his system and a successful issue, was impatient to bring it to the test; and wishing that his native country should first reap the fruits of his labours, he laid the scheme before the senate of Genoa. But the Genoese, unfortunately for their commonwealth, were unacquainted with the abilities and character of the projector, by reason of his having resided so long in foreign countries, that they rejected his plan as a chimerical undertaking. The country which had the second claim to his service was Portugal, where he had been long established. To John the second, therefore, King of Portugal, he made the next tender of his service, by offering to sail under the Portuguese flag, in quest of the new regions which he expected to discover. At first he met with a favourable reception from the King, to whom the professional skill and personal good qualities of Columbus were well known. As King John was a monarch of an enterprising spirit, and no incompetent judge in naval affairs, he listened to Columbus in a most gracious manner, and referred the consideration of his plan to Diego Ortiz, bishop of Certá, and two Jewish physicians, eminent cosmographers, whom he was accustomed to consult in matters of this kind. Here Columbus had to combat with prejudice, an enemy no less formidable than the ignorance of the Genoese, who were so little accustomed to distant voyages, that they could form no just idea of the principles on which he founded his hopes of success. The persons according to whose decision his scheme was to be adopted or rejected in Portugal, had been the chief directors of the Portuguese navigations, and contended with great confidence that India could be arrived at by pursuing a course directly opposite to that which Columbus recommended. Under these circumstances they could not approve of his proposals, without submitting to the double mortification of condemning their own theory, and of acknowledging his superior sagacity. After Columbus had given such a particular explanation of his system, as might lead

them into a knowledge of its nature, they declined passing any judgment in its favour. On the contrary they endeavoured to undermine him by advising the King to despatch a vessel, secretly, in order to attempt the discovery, by following exactly the course which Columbus seemed to point out. John forgetting on this occasion the sentiments becoming a monarch, meanly adopted this perfidious counsel. But the pilot chosen to execute Columbus's plan, had neither the genius nor the fortitude of its author. Contrary winds arose, no sight of approaching land appeared, his courage failed, and he returned to Lisbon execrating the project as equally extravagant and dangerous.

On learning this dishonourable transaction, Columbus immediately quitted Portugal and landed in Spain in order to court the protection of Ferdinand and Isabella, who at that time governed the united kingdoms of Castile and Arragon. Spain was now engaged in a dangerous war with Granada, the last of the Moorish kingdoms in that country: and as Columbus had already experienced the uncertain issue of applications to Kings and Ministers, he took the precaution, at that critical juncture, of sending into England his brother Bartholomew, to whom he had fully communicated his ideas, in order that he might negotiate with Henry VII., who was reputed one of the most sagacious as well as opulent princes in Europe. Ferdinand and Isabella though fully occupied by their operations against the Moors, paid so much regard to Columbus as to remit the consideration of his plan to the Queen's confessor, Ferdinand de Talavera. This prelate consulted such of his countrymen as he considered the most skilful in navigation.

But Spain could not at that time boast of having produced men who were versed in true science, so that those who were selected to decide a matter of such moment, did not comprehend the first principles upon which Columbus founded his conjectures. Some of them from mistaken notions concerning the dimensions of the globe, contended that a voyage to those remote parts of the east which Columbus expected to discover, could not be performed in less than three years. Others concluded that he would either find the ocean to be of infinite extent, according to the opinion of some ancient philosophers, or if he should persist in steering towards the west beyond a certain point, that the convex figure of the globe would prevent his return, and that he must inevitably perish, in the vain attempt to open a communication between the two opposite hemispheres, which nature had for ever disjoined.

They maintained that if such countries existed as Columbus represented, they could not have remained so long concealed, to be at last discovered by an obscure Genoese. He

was,  
tende  
rest o  
same  
acted  
fruitl  
referr  
Isabel  
war v  
impru  
Colum  
his en  
disapp  
and ad  
Medin  
and op  
jected  
ment f  
the for  
a sove  
the pla

A  
mortifi  
who, as  
hands  
strippe  
years.  
but in s  
himself  
in orde  
dress, i  
laid bef  
entrust  
sive ca  
or expe  
with me  
hitherto  
had no  
follow h

Bu  
Columb  
dit with  
short tin  
in mathe  
abilities  
attached



was, therefore, looked upon as a presumptuous man, who pretended that he alone possessed knowledge superior to all the rest of mankind. Here also Columbus had to contend with the same ignorance and pride of false knowledge which counteracted his plans in Portugal. Five years had now elapsed in fruitless endeavours, when Talavera, to whom the decision was referred, made such an unfavourable report to Ferdinand and Isabella as induced them to acquaint Columbus, that until the war with the Moors should be brought to a period, it would be imprudent to engage in any new and expensive enterprise.—Columbus's hopes of success were, however, so sanguine that his enthusiasm was not to be cooled by delays, nor damped by disappointments. He next applied to persons of inferior rank, and addressed successively the Dukes of Medina Sidonia, and Medina Celi, who, though subjects, were possessed of power and opulence more than equal to the enterprise which he projected. Columbus met with the same mortifying disappointment from these noblemen, who either from their ignorance of the force of his arguments, or a dread of offending the pride of a sovereign who would not countenance the scheme, rejected the plan as the invention of a chimerical projector.

Among these disappointments, Columbus had also the mortification to be unacquainted with the fate of his brother, who, as has been said by some Spanish historians, fell into the hands of Pirates on his way to England. And having been stripped of every thing, was detained a prisoner for several years. At length he made his escape and arrived in London, but in such extreme indigence, that he was obliged to employ himself during a considerable time, in drawing and selling maps, in order to pick up as much money as would purchase a decent dress, in which he might venture to appear at court. He then laid before the King the proposals, with which he had been entrusted by his brother, and notwithstanding Henry's excessive caution and parsimony which rendered him averse to new or expensive undertakings, he received Columbus's overtures with more approbation than any monarch to whom they had hitherto been presented. At this time Columbus seeing that he had no prospect of encouragement in Spain, was preparing to follow his brother to England.

But Juan Perez, the guardian of the monastery in which Columbus's children had been educated, and a man of some credit with Isabella, prevailed on him to defer his journey for a short time. This learned Monk, being a considerable proficient in mathematical knowledge, soon became acquainted with the abilities and integrity of Columbus, to whom he was so warmly attached, that he ventured to write to Queen Isabella, conjuring

her to consider the matter anew with the attention which it merited.

As there was now a certain prospect that the war with the Moors might be brought to a happy issue by the reduction of Granada, which would leave the nation at liberty to engage in new undertakings, the Queen, moved by the representations of Juan Perez, a person whom she respected as a competent judge to decide in matters of this description, countenanced, for the second time, the grand schemes of Columbus. Accordingly, she desired Perez to repair to the village of Santa Fe, in which, on account of the siege of Granada, the court resided at that time, that she might confer with him on this important subject. This interview proved so favorable, that Columbus received a warm invitation to return to court. His former friends, therefore, Alonso de Quintanilla, comptroller of the finances in Castille, and Louis de Santangel, receiver of the ecclesiastical revenues in Arragon, seeing this happy change in favor of Columbus, appeared with greater confidence than ever to support his scheme. Although Isabella expressed her approbation, still Ferdinand pronounced the scheme to be impracticable. Columbus, however, as if determined to surmount every obstacle that could be thrown in his way, appeared before them with the same confident hopes of success as formerly, and insisted upon the same high recompense. Columbus proposed that a small fleet should be fitted out under his command, to attempt the discovery; that he should be appointed hereditary admiral and viceroy of all the seas and lands which he should discover; and that he should have the tenth part of the profits arising from them settled irrevocably upon himself and his descendants. At the same time he offered to advance the eighth part of the sum necessary for accomplishing his design, on condition that he should be entitled to a proportional share of benefit from the adventure.

If the enterprize should totally fail, he made no stipulation for any reward or emolument whatever. But the persons with whom Columbus was treating, began to calculate the enormous expense of the expedition, and the exorbitant reward which he demanded for himself. In this imposing garb of caution and prudence, they misrepresented every thing to Ferdinand, who opposed the adventure from the commencement.—Isabella, though more generous and enterprising, was under the influence of her husband in all her actions, and declined again giving any countenance to Columbus. Thus Columbus almost despaired of success, and withdrew from Court in deep anguish, with an intention of prosecuting his voyage to England, as his last resource. About that time, Granada surrendered, and Ferdinand and Isabella, in triumphal pomp took

posses  
vereign  
them r  
of the

the mi  
gel, th  
vantag  
more  
Isabell  
standin  
ence i  
form j  
the situ  
said, fo  
consider  
undert  
offer to  
scheme  
and ho

T  
thority  
effect.  
dered C  
lution  
finance  
her ow  
require  
she mig  
ged to  
lumbus  
returne  
journey  
facility  
bus wa

TI  
as sove  
admiral  
discove  
for ever  
rogative  
the limi  
viceroy  
ver; b  
hereaft  
of those  
sons, of

possession of a city, the reduction of which, extirpated a sovereign power from the heart of their dominions and rendered them masters of all the provinces, extending from the bottom of the Pyrenees to the frontiers of Portugal.

As the flow of spirits which accompanies success elevates the mind, and renders it enterprising, Quintanilla and SantAngel, the vigilant and discerning patrons of Columbus, took advantage of this favourable situation, in order to make one effort more in behalf of their friend. They addressed themselves to Isabella, and represented Columbus as a man of sound understanding and virtuous character, well qualified by his experience in navigation, as well as his knowledge in geometry, to form just ideas with respect to the structure of the globe, and the situation of its various regions. The sum requisite, they said, for equipping such an armament as he demanded, was inconsiderable, and the advantages which might accrue from his undertaking, were immense. They also convinced her that his offer to risk his own life and fortune in the execution of his scheme, gave the most satisfying evidence both of his integrity and hope of success.

These forcible arguments, urged by persons of such authority, and at a juncture so well chosen, produced the desired effect. They dispelled all Isabella's fears and doubts. She ordered Columbus to be instantly recalled, and declared her resolution to employ him on his own terms. The state of her finances were at that time so low, that she offered to pledge her own jewels, in order to raise as much money as might be required to accomplish his design. SantAngel, however, lest she might have recourse to such a mortifying expedient, engaged to advance immediately the sum that was requisite. Columbus, upon hearing this unexpected revolution in his favor, returned to Santa Fe, for he was now several leagues on his journey to England. The negotiation now went forward with facility and despatch, and a treaty of capitulation with Columbus was signed on the seventeenth of April, 1492.

The chief articles of it were,—1, Ferdinand and Isabella, as sovereigns of the ocean, constituted Columbus their high admiral in all the seas, islands, and continents which might be discovered by his industry; and stipulated, that he and his heirs for ever should enjoy this office, with the same powers and prerogatives which belonged to the high admiral of Castile, within the limits of his jurisdiction. 2. They appointed Columbus their viceroys in all the islands and continents which he should discover; but if, for the better administration of affairs, it should hereafter be necessary to establish a separate governor in any of those countries, they authorised Columbus to name three persons, of whom they would choose one, for that office; and the



dignity of viceroy, with all its immunities, was likewise to be hereditary in the family of Columbus. 3. They granted to Columbus, and his heirs forever, the tenth part of the free profits accruing from the productions and commerce of the countries he should discover. 4. They declared that if any controversy or law-suit should arise, with respect to any mercantile transaction in the countries which should be discovered, it should be determined by the sole authority of Columbus, or of judges to be appointed by him. 5. They permitted Columbus to advance one-eighth part of what should be expended in preparing for the expedition, and in carrying on commerce with the countries he should discover, and entitled him in return to an eighth part of the profit.

As soon as the treaty was signed, Isabella, by her attention and activity in forwarding the preparations for the voyage, endeavoured to make some reparation to Columbus for the time he had lost in fruitless solicitation. By the 12th of May, all that depended upon her was adjusted.

After Columbus had waited on the King and Queen, and received his final instructions, Isabella ordered the ships of which Columbus was to take the command, to be fitted out in the port of Palos, a small maritime town in the province of Andalusia. Fortunately for Columbus, Juan Perez, who always interested himself in behalf of this enterprising navigator, resided in the neighbourhood of this place, and by the influence of this good ecclesiastic, Columbus not only procured the sum he was bound by treaty to advance, but also engaged several of the inhabitants to accompany him in the voyage. The chief of these associates were three brothers of the name of Pinzon, of considerable wealth, and of great experience in naval affairs, who were willing to hazard their lives and fortunes in the expedition. But after all the efforts of Isabella and Columbus, the armament was not suitable, either to the dignity of the nation by which it was equipped, or to the importance of the service for which it was destined.

This small squadron consisted of three vessels. The largest, a ship of no considerable burden, was commanded by Columbus as admiral, who gave it the name of *Santa Maria*, out of respect for the Virgin Mary. The second, which was called the *Pinta*, was commanded by Martin Pinzon. Of the third, named the *Nigna*, Vincent Yanez Pinzon was captain. This squadron was victualled for twelve months, and had on board ninety men, mostly sailors, together with a few adventurers who followed the fortune of Columbus, and some gentlemen of Isabella's court, whom she appointed to accompany him.

Though the expense of the undertaking was one of the circumstances which chiefly alarmed the court of Spain, and re-

tard  
in fit

trem  
to th  
accu  
the e  
fleet  
wher  
and  
migh

long  
every  
adver  
ardou  
Isabe  
that e  
Colum  
would  
great  
plorin  
this v  
march  
where  
crame  
his pr  
he had

N  
the ye  
set sai  
specta  
prospe  
expect  
and ar  
would  
voyag  
was th  
loose, t  
the cre  
of the

E  
to be s  
naviga  
Colum  
having

tarded so long the negotiation with Columbus, the sum employed in fitting out this squadron did not exceed four thousand pounds.

As the art of ship-building in the fifteenth century was extremely rude, and the bulk of the vessels was accommodated to the short and easy voyage along the coast which they were accustomed to perform, it is a proof of the courage as well as the enterprising genius of Columbus, that he ventured, with a fleet so unfit for a distant navigation, to explore unknown seas, where he had no chart to guide him, no knowledge of the tides and currents, and no experience of the dangers to which he might be exposed.

His eagerness to accomplish the great design which had so long engrossed his thoughts, made him overlook or disregard every circumstance that would have intimidated a mind less adventurous. He pushed forward the preparations with such ardour, and was seconded so effectually by the persons to whom Isabella had committed the superintendance of this business, that every thing was soon in readiness for the voyage. But as Columbus was deeply impressed with sentiments of religion, he would not set out on an expedition so arduous, and of which one great object was to propagate the Christian faith, without imploring publicly the protection and guidance of Heaven. With this view he, together with all the persons under his command, marched in solemn procession to the Monastery of Rabida, where, having confessed their sins, they received the holy sacrament from the hands of the guardian, Juan Perez, who joined his prayers to theirs for the success of an enterprise which he had so zealously patronized.

Next morning, being Friday the third day of August, in the year one thousand four hundred and ninety-two, Columbus set sail, a little before sun rise, in presence of a vast crowd of spectators, who sent up their supplications to heaven, for the prosperous issue of the voyage, which they wished rather than expected. Columbus steered directly for the Canary islands, and arrived there, August 13, 1492, without any occurrence that would have deserved notice on any other occasion. But, in a voyage of such expectation and importance, every circumstance was the object of attention. The rudder of the *Pinta* broke loose, the day after she left the harbour, and that accident alarmed the crew, no less superstitious than unskilful, as a certain omen of the unfortunate destiny of the expedition.

Even in the short run to the Canaries, the ships were found to be so crazy and ill-appointed, as to be very improper for a navigation, which was expected to be both long and dangerous. Columbus re-fitted them, however, to the best of his power, and having supplied himself with fresh provisions, he took his de-

parture from *Gomera*, one of the most westerly of the Canary islands, on the sixth day of September.

Here the voyage of discovery may probably be said to begin; for Columbus, holding his course due west, left immediately the usual track of navigation, and stretched into unfrequented and unknown seas. The first day, as it was very calm, he made but little way; but on the second, he lost sight of the Canaries; and many of the sailors, dejected already and dismayed, when they contemplated the boldness of the undertaking, began to beat their breasts and to shed tears, as if they were never more to behold land. Columbus comforted them with assurances of success, and the prospect of vast wealth, in those opulent regions whither he was conducting them.

This early discovery of the spirit of his followers taught Columbus, that he must prepare to struggle, not only with the unavoidable difficulties, which might be expected from the nature of his undertaking, but with such as were likely to arise from the ignorance and timidity of the people under his command; and he perceived that the art of governing the minds of men would be no less requisite for accomplishing the discoveries which he had in view, than naval skill and undaunted courage. Happily for himself and the country by which he was employed, he joined to the ardent temper and inventive genius of a projector, virtues of another species, which are rarely united with them. He possessed a thorough knowledge of mankind, an insinuating address, a patient perseverance in executing any plan, the perfect government of his passions, and the talent of acquiring an ascendant over those of other men. All these qualifications which formed him for command, were accompanied with that superior knowledge of his profession which begets confidence in times of difficulty and danger. To unskilful Spanish sailors, accustomed only to coasting voyages in the Mediterranean, the maritime science of Columbus, the fruit of thirty years' experience, improved by an acquaintance with all the inventions of the Portuguese, appeared immense. As soon as they put to sea, he regulated everything by his sole authority; he superintend the execution of every order; and allowing himself only a few hours for sleep, he was at all other times on deck. As his course lay through seas which had not formerly been visited, the sounding line or instruments for observation were continually in his hands. After the example of the Portuguese discoverers, he attended to the motion of tides and currents, watched the flight of birds, the appearance of fishes, and of sea weeds, and of every thing that floated on the waves, and entered every occurrence with a minute exactness, in the journal which he kept. As the length of the voyage could not fail of alarming sailors habituated only to short excursions, Colum-

bus  
they  
leag  
that  
the  
tem  
the  
Spa  
with  
serv  
point  
and  
ance  
mys  
terro  
from  
alter  
them  
vent  
satis  
their

latitu  
the s  
to wa  
He a  
that  
hund  
so co  
tent;  
notic  
new  
now  
that  
and d  
had  
deav  
have  
appro  
carri  
the s  
spond  
enter  
miral  
west  
the p

bus endeavoured to conceal from them the real progress which they had made with this view, though they had run eighteen leagues on the second day after they left Gomera, he gave out that they had advanced only fifteen, and he uniformly employed the same artifice during the whole voyage. By the 14th of September the fleet was above two hundred leagues to the west of the Canary isles, at a greater distance from land than any Spaniard had been before that time. There they were struck with an appearance no less astonishing than new. They observed that the magnetic needle, in their compasses, did not point exactly to the polar star, but varied towards the west; and as they proceeded, this variation increased. This appearance which is now familiar, though it still remains one of the mysteries of nature, filled the companions of Columbus with terror. They were now in a boundless unknown ocean, far from the usual course of navigation, nature itself seemed to be altered, and the only guide which they had left was about to fail them. Columbus, with no less quickness than ingenuity, invented a reason for this appearance, which, though it did not satisfy himself, seemed so plausible to them, that it dispelled their fears and silenced their murmurs.

He still continued to steer due west, nearly in the same latitude with the Canary islands. In this course he came within the sphere of the trade wind, which blows invariably from east to west, between the tropics and a few degrees beyond them. He advanced before this steady gale, with such uniform rapidity that it was seldom necessary to shift a sail. When about four hundred leagues to the west of the Canaries, he found the sea so covered with weeds, that it resembled a meadow of vast extent; and in some places they were so thick as to retard the motion of the vessels. This strange appearance occasioned new alarm and disquiet. The sailors imagined that they had now arrived at the utmost boundary of the navigable ocean; that these floating weeds would obstruct their farther progress, and conceal dangerous rocks, or some large tract of land, which had sunk, they knew not how, in that place. Columbus endeavoured to persuade them, that what had alarmed, ought to have encouraged them, and was to be considered as a sign of approaching land. At the same time a brisk gale arose, and carried them forward. Several birds were seen hovering about the ships, and directed their flight towards the west. The desponding crew resumed some degree of spirit, and began to entertain fresh hopes.

Upon the first of October they were, according to the Admiral's reckoning, seven hundred and seventy leagues to the west of the Canaries; but lest his men should be intimidated by the prodigious length of navigation, he gave out that they had

proceeded only five hundred and eighty-four leagues ; and fortunately for Columbus, neither his own pilot, nor those of the other ships, had skill sufficient to correct this error and discover the deceit. They had now been above three weeks at sea, and had advanced far beyond what former navigators attempted or deemed possible. All their prognostics of discovery, drawn from the flight of birds and other circumstances proved fallacious. This disappointment made first, an impression on the minds of the timid and ignorant ; but by degrees the contagion spread from ship to ship. From secret whisperings and murmurings, they proceeded to open cabals and public complaints. They taxed their sovereign with inconsiderate credulity, in paying such regard to the vain promises and rash conjectures of an indigent foreigner. They affirmed that they had done their duty, by venturing so far in an unknown and hopeless course, without any probability of discovering those new countries which their commander described.

Columbus was now fully sensible of his perilous situation. He had observed with great uneasiness the fatal operation of ignorance and fear. He saw to his great mortification, that the disaffection among the crew was ready to burst out into an open mutiny. Notwithstanding the agitation and solicitude of his mind, Columbus pretended to be ignorant of their machinations, and appeared before them with a cheerful countenance, like a man satisfied with the progress he had made. Sometimes he employed all the arts of insinuation to soothe his men. Sometimes he endeavoured to work upon their ambition or avarice, by magnificent descriptions of the fame and wealth which they were about to acquire. On other occasions, he assumed a tone of authority and threatened them with vengeance from their sovereign, if by their dastardly behaviour, they would defeat this noble effort to exalt the Spanish name above that of every other nation. Even with seditious sailors, the words of a man whom they had been accustomed to reverence, were weighty and persuasive, and not only restrained them from violent excesses, which they meditated, but prevailed on them to accompany him for some time longer.

As they proceeded, the indications of approaching land seemed to be more certain, and excited some in proportion. The birds began to appear in flocks, making towards the south west. Columbus, in imitation of the Portuguese navigators, who had been guided in several of their discoveries, by the motion of birds, altered his course from due west towards that quarter whither they pointed their flight. But, after holding on for several days in this new direction, without any better success than formerly, the hopes of his companions subsided faster than they had risen. Impatience, rage and despair appeared

on every countenance; all sense of subordination was lost, and the officers who had formerly concurred with Columbus in opinion, and supported his authority, now took part with the private men; they assembled tumultuously on the deck, expostulated with the commander, mingled threats with expostulations, and required him instantly to tack about and return to Europe. Columbus perceived, that it would be of no avail to have recourse to his former arts, which having been tried so often, had lost their effect; and that it was impossible to re-kindle any zeal for the success of the expedition among men, in whose hearts, fear had extinguished every generous sentiment. He saw that it would be no less vain to think of employing either gentle or severe measures, to quell a mutiny so general and violent. At this critical juncture, he promised solemnly that he would return, provided they would accompany him three days longer. Enraged as the sailors were, this proposition did not appear unreasonable. The presages of discovering land became now more numerous. The flocks of birds increased, and were composed not only of sea fowl, but of such land birds as could not be supposed to fly far from the shore.

The crew of the *Pinta* observed a cane floating, which seemed to have been newly cut, and likewise a piece of timber artificially carved. The sailors aboard the *Nigna* took up the branch of a tree with red berries perfectly fresh. The clouds around the setting sun assumed a new appearance; the air was more mild and warm, and during night, the wind became unequal and variable. From all these symptoms, Columbus was so confident of being near land, that on the evening of the eleventh of October, after public prayers for success, he ordered the sails to be furled, and the ships to lie to, keeping strict watch, lest they should be driven ashore in the night. During this interval of suspense and expectation, no man shut his eyes, all kept upon deck, gazing intently towards that quarter where they expected to discover the land, which had been so long the object of their wishes. About two hours before midnight, Columbus, standing on the fore-castle, observed a light at a distance, and privately pointed it out to Pedro Gutherez, a page of the Queen's wardrobe. Gutherez perceived it, and calling to Salcedo, controller of the fleet, all three saw it in motion, as if it were carried from place to place. A little after midnight, the joyful sound of *land, land*, was heard from the *Pinta*, which kept always ahead of the other ships. But, having been so often deceived by fallacious appearances, every man was now become slow of belief, and waited in all the anguish of uncertainty and impatience, for the return of day. As soon as morning dawned, Friday, October 12, all doubts and fears were dispelled. From every ship an island was seen about two leagues to the north,



whose flat and verdant fields, well stored with wood, and watered with many rivulets, presented the aspect of a delightful country. The crew of the *Pinta* instantly began the *Te Deum*, as a hymn of thanksgiving to God, and were joined by those of other ships, with tears of joy and transports of congratulation. This office of gratitude to heaven, was followed by an act of justice to their commander. They threw themselves at the feet of Columbus, with feelings of self-condemnation, mingled with reverence. They implored him to pardon their ignorance, incredulity, and insolence, which had created him so much unnecessary disquiet, and had so often obstructed the prosecution of his well-concerted plan; and passing in the warmth of their admiration, from one extreme to another, they now pronounced the man, whom they had so lately reviled and threatened, to be a person sent by heaven with sagacity and fortitude more than human, in order to accomplish a design, so far beyond the ideas and conceptions of all former ages.

As soon as the sun arose, all their boats were manned and armed. They rowed towards the island with their colours displayed, with war-like music, and other martial pomp. As they approached the coast, they saw it covered with a multitude of people, whom the novelty of the spectacle had drawn together, whose attitudes and gestures expressed wonder and astonishment at the strange objects which presented themselves to their view. Columbus was the first European who set foot in the new world which he had discovered. He landed in a rich dress, and with a naked sword in his hand. His men followed, and kneeling down, they all kissed the ground which they had so long desired to see. They next erected a crucifix, and prostrating themselves before it, returned thanks to God for conducting their voyage to such an happy issue. They then took solemn possession of the country for the crown of Castile and Leon, with all the formalities which the Portuguese were accustomed to observe in acts of this kind, in their own discoveries.

The Spaniards, while thus employed, were surrounded by many of the natives, who gazed in silent admiration upon actions which they could not comprehend, and of which they did not foresee the consequences. The dress of the Spaniards, the whiteness of their skins, their beards, their arms, appeared strange and surprising.

The vast machine in which they had traversed the ocean, that seemed to move in the water with wings, and uttered a dreadful sound resembling thunder, accompanied with lightning and smoke, struck them with such terror, that they began to respect their new guests as a superior order of beings, and concluded that they were children of the sun, who had descended to visit the earth.

T  
before  
from th  
rich, bu  
Spania  
habitan  
naked.  
shoulde  
had no  
smooth  
feature  
and tim  
Their f  
painted  
fear, bu  
transp  
or othe  
as they  
they co  
the ship  
which t  
trunk o  
Thus in  
and nev  
their m  
tious, f  
which u  
to their  
foresigh  
ing their  
authori  
discove

It  
natives  
the Lu  
sagacit  
conceal  
No eve  
to the i  
Americ  
it at on  
power  
vernme  
nexions  
gions, f  
The pr  
consum

The Europeans were hardly less amazed at the scene new before them. Every herb, and shrub, and tree, was different from those which flourished in Europe. The soil seemed to be rich, but bore few marks of cultivation. The climate, even to Spaniards, felt warm, though extremely delightful. The inhabitants appeared in the simple innocence of nature, entirely naked. Their black hair, long and uncurled, floated upon their shoulders, or was bound in tresses around their heads. They had no beards, and every part of their bodies was perfectly smooth. Their complexion was of a dusky copper colour, their features singular, rather than disagreeable, their aspect gentle and timid, though not tall, they were well shaped, and active. Their faces and several parts of their bodies were fantastically painted with glaring colours. They were shy at first, through fear, but soon became familiar with the Spaniards, and with transports of joy received from them hawk's-bells, glass beads, or other baubles, in return for which they gave such provisions as they had, and some cotton yarn, the only commodity of value they could produce. Towards evening Columbus returned to the ships, accompanied by many of the islanders in their boats, which they called *canoes*, and though rudely formed out of the trunk of a single tree, they rowed them with surprising dexterity. Thus in the first interview between the inhabitants of the old and new worlds, every thing was conducted amicably, and to their mutual satisfaction. The former, enlightened and ambitious, formed already vast ideas with respect to the advantages which they might derive from the regions which began to open to their view. The latter, simple and undiscerning, had no foresight of the calamities and desolation which were approaching their country. Columbus who now assumed the title and authority of admiral and viceroy, called the island which he discovered, *San Salvador*.

It is better known by the name of *Guanahani*, which the natives gave it, and is one of that large cluster of islands called the Lucaya or Bahama isles. Thus Columbus, by his superior sagacity and fortitude, had conducted the Spaniards, by a route concealed from past ages, to the knowledge of the new world. No event ever proved so interesting to mankind in general, and to the inhabitants of Europe in particular, as the discovery of America and the passage to India by the Cape of Good Hope: it at once gave rise to a revolution in the commerce and in the power of nations, as well as in the manners, industry and government of almost the whole world. At this period new connexions were formed by the inhabitants of the most distant regions, for the supply of wants they had never before experienced. The production of climates situated under the equator were consumed in countries bordering on the pole; the industry of



the north was transplanted to the south ; and the inhabitants of the west were clothed with the manufactures of the east ; in short, a general intercourse of opinions, laws and customs, diseases and remedies, virtues and vices, were established among them.

OR

HAVING  
Christo  
the pe  
it was  
from th  
Asia, t  
are dif  
the red  
celebra  
their n  
totally  
no dou  
rious.  
quity ;  
charact  
with th  
resemb  
bear to  
the Nor  
rica ha  
the effe  
is the n  
pised a  
continc  
bitants  
worthy  
cannot  
arts, ag  
they di  
and ind  
were i  
and str  
refineme  
be found  
of specie  
an equa  
we can  
always  
and the  
ances.  
or whic

inhabitants  
the east ; in  
d customs,  
established

## ORIGIN OF THE NORTH AMERICAN INDIANS.

HAVING given an account of the discovery of America by Christopher Columbus, we shall now proceed to account for the peopling of this continent. When America was discovered, it was found inhabited by a race of people, no less different from the inhabitants of Europe, Africa, and the greater part of Asia, than the climate and natural productions of the new world are different from those of the old. To trace the descent of the red men who are melting, as was said by one of their most celebrated warriors, like snow before the sun, and perpetuate their national character on the page of history, before they totally disappear as a portion of the human race, will, we have no doubt, be no less gratifying to the scientific than to the curious. In perambulating this labyrinth of obscurity and antiquity ; no safer guide can be offered us, than a portrait of the characteristic features of the Indians, which, when compared with the national character of some Asiatic tribes, will, by the resemblance which, in their manners, habits and customs they bear to each other, lead us to the original source whence sprang the North American Indians. The European colonies in America have now become too numerous and too powerful to fear the effects of savage barbarity, and when fear ceases contempt is the natural consequence. While the Indians are thus despised and forgotten as the original proprietors of this vast continent, which has served as a refuge to the oppressed inhabitants of Europe in general, they are by many deemed unworthy the attention of antiquaries. The Indians, it is true, cannot be classed among civilized nations, who cultivated the arts, agriculture and commerce ; still, leading a barbarous life as they did, it cannot be denied that the lofty notions of honour and independence, with which the minds of some Indian tribes were imbued and urged them to deeds of admirable heroism and striking generosity, is a proof of elevation of mind and refinement of sentiment ; qualities, perhaps, which are seldom to be found among those who charge the Indians with an inferiority of species. The greatest part of them had truly a nobleness and an equality of soul, which we seldom attain, with all the helps we can obtain from philosophy and religion. They were always masters of themselves, in the most sudden misfortunes, and the least alteration could not be perceived in their countenances. A prisoner who knew in what his captivity would end, or which, perhaps is more surprising, who was uncertain of his

fate, did not loose on this account a quarter of an hour's sleep; even the first emotions did not find them at a fault.

It is no less astonishing to see men whose whole outward appearance proclaimed nothing but barbarity, behave to each other with such kindness and regard, that are not perhaps to be experienced among the most civilized nations. This doubtless proceeded in some measure from the words *mine* and *thine* being as yet unknown to those savages. Those cold words, as St. Chrysostom calls them, which extinguishing in our hearts the fire of charity, light up that of covetousness. We are equally charmed with that natural and unaffected gravity which reigned in all their behaviour, in all their actions, in the greatest part of their diversions. As likewise with the civility and deference they showed to their equals, and the respect of the young people to the aged; and lastly, to see that they never quarrelled among themselves with those indecent expressions, and the oaths and curses so common among the whites. All these are proofs of good sense, and a great command of temper.

The Indians have been frequently misrepresented by writers, who had been either prejudiced against them from some impure motives, or who had been too transiently resident amongst them, to ascertain with any accuracy the real character of the Indians; for the Indians are not communicative in relation to their national peculiarities, or original descent. It requires, therefore, a good deal of familiar, attentive and unsuspecting observation to obtain any knowledge respecting them, as they have neither records nor oral tradition to throw any degree of satisfactory light on their character and descent.

The speculative opinions of several historians who wrote concerning the religion of the Indian tribes of America, and the question, whence America might have been peopled, led to many misrepresentations of the religious rites, language and customs of its original inhabitants. They discovered affinities which existed no where, but in the fanciful invention of the discoverers. Gomara, Lerius, and Lescarbot inferred from some resemblances of this kind, that America had been peopled by the Canaanites, when they were expelled by Joshua. The celebrated Grotius adopting the opinion of Martyr, imagined that Yucatan, a Province of New Spain, was first colonized by the Ethiopians, and that those Ethiopians were christians. The human mind derives pleasure from paradox, for the same reason that it delights in wit. Both produce new and surprising combinations of thought, and the judgment being overpowered by the fervours of imagination, becomes for a time insensible to their extravagance.

The opinion extensively prevails, that the North American Indians are descendants of the tribes of Israel. This theory

so pos  
est of  
tively  
fidelit  
equip  
mediu

I  
inter  
the e  
folded  
soul n  
Their  
darkne  
with c  
tinent,  
actual  
long lo  
with c  
this th  
researc  
were i  
it is tr  
connex  
degree  
langua  
we find  
the Ind  
Algonk  
a cons  
Indians  
in the l  
Hebrev  
of conf  
North .

On  
spoken  
Mr. He  
and the  
the W  
and oth

TI  
age on  
now ex  
sent St  
angos,  
now sp  
Kickap

so possessed the mind of Adair, that although he had the greatest opportunity of obtaining knowledge, his book is comparatively of little use. We are constantly led to suspect the fidelity of his statements, because his judgment had lost its equipoise, and he saw every thing through a discoloured medium.

It is impossible for the religious man, not to take particular interest in the history of the Hebrews; and while he reads of the extermination of the kingdom of Israel, when the blind-folded tribes were torn from the land of their prerogative, his soul must be filled with compassion for their misfortunes.— Their subsequent history is attended with such impenetrable darkness, that this sentiment of compassion naturally combines with curiosity, to penetrate even the forests of the western continent, in order to identify the lost tribes of Israel. This has actually been the case, for the idea of tracing to America the long lost tribes of Israel, rose before the imagination of many with captivating splendour. In the establishment however of this theory, the judgments of those who endeavoured to make researches this way, were so much perverted that resemblances were imagined which had no existence in reality. The affinity it is true, of languages tends in some measure to point out the connexion of nations; but this depends on the high or low degree of similarity which we find when we collate the one language with the other. In the Celtic language, for example, we find several words which bear some radical resemblance to the Indian, especially to that language which is spoken by the Algonkins: but hence, it would not be reasonable to conclude a consanguinity between the Irish and the North American Indians. It is, therefore, on the resemblance which a few words in the languages of the Indians of North America bear to the Hebrew, that some authors have contended with a great deal of confidence, that the lost tribes of Israel are the red men of North America.

On the continent of America three radical languages are spoken by the Indians, exclusive of the Karalit or Esquimeaux. Mr. Heckenelder denominates them the Iroquois, the Lenape, and the Floridian. The Iroquois is spoken by the six nations, the Wyandots or Hurons, the Naudowessies, the Assiniboils, and other tribes beyond the St. Lawrence.

The Lenape which is the most widely extended language on this side of the Mississippi, was spoken by the tribes now extinct, who formerly inhabited Nova Scotia and the present State of Maine, the Abenakis, Micmacs, Canibas, Openangos, Soccokis, Etchemins, and Souriquois; dialects of it are now spoken by the Miamis, the Potanotamies, Mississagoos, and Kickapoos; the Conestogos, Nanticokos, Shawanese, and

Mochicans; the Algonquins, the Knistewans, and Chippeways. The Floridian includes the languages of the Creeks or Muscogees, Chickesaas, Chocktaws, Pascagoulas, the Cherokees, Seminoles and several others in the southern states of Florida. These three languages are primitive, that is to say, are so distantly related, as to have no perceivable affinity.

Seeing therefore that there are three primitive languages spoken by the North American Indians, which have no radical connexion the one with the other, it would be absurd to countenance for a moment the assertion, that the red men of America are the lost tribes of Israel, without having a better proof than a similarity, as we have already mentioned, between a few Indian and Hebrew words. The distant relation itself between these three primitive languages of America is enough to overthrow the argument; for, if the Indians are the descendants of the Hebrews, it would certainly follow that almost all the dialects, especially the three primitive languages would not only bear a most striking resemblance to the Hebrew, but would also be more nearly allied among themselves. Besides there is one striking peculiarity in the construction of American languages, which has no counterpart in the Hebrew. Instead of the ordinary division of genders, they divide them into animate and inanimate.

But this is not the only instance, in which the Hebrew and the Indian languages differ in their idioms. To enumerate, however, all the idiomatical discordances of the Indian and Hebrew language, will not be necessary on the present occasion, as we shall prove in the following pages, beyond the possibility of a doubt, that the Indians are descended from a different source. Those, therefore, who contend from merely a slight affinity of languages, that they have discovered the long lost tribes of Israel on the western continent, might as well say that the Arabians and Abyssinians are the lost tribes of Israel, for their languages have a very strong affinity with the Hebrew. Were we even to allow the affinity of languages in its fullest extent, the only legitimate inference would be, that the languages of America are of oriental origin; and consequently that America was peopled from Asia.

But the affinity between the Hebrew and the Indian languages of America, is so slight and imperceptible that we could scarcely be induced, on this ground alone, to believe, even the Asiatic origin of the North American Indians. However much the language of the primitive inhabitants of the western continent became altered by the revolutions which are incident to communities and nations, it is not to be presumed, that the original language was totally extinguished; some vestiges would still remain, as a monument of its original descent.

of skin  
indica  
also, t  
equal  
dian i  
visiter  
his las  
Kams  
and A  
and th  
quentl  
to the  
Beerin  
Capt  
ages, b  
tween  
either  
count  
Asia.  
of isla  
freque  
From  
was pe  
inquiry  
prove  
can In  
coast o  
tinct fr  
disposi  
bear a  
beards  
tures o  
tribes  
beards  
only in  
habits  
T  
tribes  
believ  
the no  
from s  
peculi  
A  
Green  
with t  
12th.

Religion, customs, the shape and size of the body, the tinge of skin, and the features of the visage are, as well as language, indicative of the original connexion of nations. But in this view also, the relation between the Indians and tribes of Israel, is equally distant, as will be seen when we delineate the red Indian in that original state in which he was found by the first visitors from Europe. By the discoveries of Captain Cooke in his last voyage, it has been established beyond a doubt, that at Kamschatka, in about latitude  $66^{\circ}$  north, the continents of Asia and America are separated by a strait only eighteen miles wide, and that the inhabitants on each continent are similar, and frequently pass and repass in their canoes, from the one continent to the other. It is also certain that during the winter season, Beering's straits are frozen from the one side to the other. Captain Williamson, who was lieutenant to Cooke in those voyages, has also asserted that, from the middle of the channel between Kamschatka and America he had discovered land on either side. This short distance, therefore, he says, should account for the peopling of America from the north east parts of Asia. The same author further asserts, that there is a cluster of islands interspersed between the two continents; and that he frequently saw canoes passing from one island to the other. From these circumstances we may fairly conclude that America was peopled from the north east parts of Asia; and during our inquiry, we shall endeavour to point out facts, which tend to prove the particular tribes in Asia, from whom the North American Indians are directly descended. The Esquimeaux on the coast of Labrador, are evidently a separate species of men, distinct from all the nations of the American continent, in language, disposition and habits of life; and in all these respects, they bear a near resemblance to the Northern Europeans. Their beards are so thick and large, that it is with difficulty the features of their face can be discovered, while all the other Indian tribes of America are particularly distinguished for the want of beards: The North American Indians resemble each other, not only in mental and bodily frame, but generally in their manners, habits and customs.

The Esquimeaux are a very diminutive race; but the other tribes are generally tall, athletic, and well proportioned. It is believed by many that the Esquimeaux Indians emigrated from the north west parts of Europe. In this belief we are confirmed from several circumstances. Low stature and long beards are peculiar to some countries in the north west parts of Europe.

As early as the ninth century the Norwegians discovered Greenland, and planted colonies there. The communication with that country, after a long interruption, was renewed in the 12th. century. Some missionaries, prompted by zeal for propa-



gating the christian faith, ventured to settle in this frozen region. From them we have learned that the north west coast of Greenland is seperated from America, but by a very narrow strait, if seperated at all; and that the Esquimeaux of America perfectly resemble the Greenlanders in their aspect, dress, mode of living, and probably language. The following passage which we have quoted from Senor Juan Perez, will tend in a great measure to identify the Esquimeaux as the descendants of the Greenlanders. Juan Perez a Spaniard, remained for several years in Greenland and on the coasts of Labrador, as missionary for the propagation of the christian religion:

*“ Los nativos de Greenland y los Indios de Labrador parecen los mismos. La identidad no consiste solamente en la forma de las personas, que no exceden cinco pies de altura, mas tambien en la complexion, que es el color amarillo. Los Indios de Labrador y los nativos de Greenland son carianchos, romos, bezudos, y tengon los ojos y los cabellos negros. La lengua de los Esquimeaux no es que un dialecto de aquella que se habla en Greenland. Esta lengua abunda en largas polisilabas. Las canoas de los dos pueblos son hechas en la misma manera. Ambos adoran el Grande Espiritu con otros inferiores que residen por todas partes. De estas y otras coincidencias que yo no numerave al presente, son convencido que la tierra de Labrador ha sido poblada por los nativos de Greenland.”*

The inhabitants of Greenland, says Juan Perez, have a striking resemblance to the Esquimeaux, not only in persons, which seldom exceed five feet, but in complexion, which is yellow. The Esquimeaux and the inhabitants of Greenland have broad faces, flat noses, thick lips, with black eyes and hair. The language of the Esquimeaux is no other than a dialect of that language which is spoken in Greenland, abounding in polysyllables of great length. The canoes used by the Esquimeaux are exactly built of the same materials, and in the same form as those of the Greenlanders. Both these people have their *Great Spirit*, as well as several other inferior ones residing, according to their belief, in every part of the country. From these and other circumstances, continues Juan Perez, I am convinced that the Esquimeaux are the descendants of the Greenlanders.

The coasts of Labrador, on the Atlantic, are inhabited by tribes of those people, who have been called Esquimeaux. This name has been given them by the tribes of American Indians, from whom they seem to be a people entirely different. The name signifies eaters of raw flesh, which the Esquimeaux are observed to do frequently. These tribes are said to be distinguished from the other American Indians by many characteris-

tics. which of Eur observ These the A believe to that and far in any which the inh Europ of pro same a rationa tions fr the sin migrat that inh their u blance west p

able to evident Indians tribes, Cape H

TH said, of is to co ners, ha nations we may connect to whom

PER

TH their e strong, endure

tics. Their colour is not that of copper, but the tawny brown which distinguishes the inhabitants of the more northern parts of Europe: They all have beards, and some of them have been observed with hair of different colours, some fair and others red. These marks by which they are so evidently distinguished from the American Indians, have inclined several philosophers to believe that they are of European descent; their colour is similar to that of the inhabitants of the north of Europe. Their red and fair hair, found in the north of Europe, more frequently than in any other part of the world; but above all, their language, which is said to be a dialect of that spoken in East Greenland, the inhabitants of which are believed to have emigrated from Europe, seem to give this conjecture a considerable appearance of probability; besides, their religious notions are exactly the same as those of the Greenlanders. On the whole, it appears rational to believe, that the progenitors of all the American nations from Cape Horn to the southern limits of Labrador, from the similarity of their aspect, colour, language, and customs, migrated from the north east parts of Asia; and that the nations that inhabit Labrador, Esquimeaux and the parts adjacent, from their unlikeness to the rest of the Americans, and their resemblance to the northern Europeans, came over from the north west parts of Europe.

Such are the most rational conjectures which we have been able to form respecting the origin of the Esquimeaux, who are evidently a different race from all the other North American Indians. It remains now to trace the descent of these other tribes, who are scattered over that country which extends from Cape Horn to the southern limits of Labrador.

The most unequivocal mode, therefore, as we have already said, of throwing any satisfactory light on this obscure subject, is to compare the personal appearance, religion, and the manners, habits and customs of the Indians, with those of Asiatic nations; and when we find a striking similarity between them, we may fairly conclude, that the North American Indians are connected with them, and that they are the descendants of those to whom they bear the greatest resemblance.

---

#### PERSONS, FEATURES, AND COLOUR OF THE NORTH AMERICAN INDIANS.

The North American Indians have a striking similarity in their external appearance: Their bodies though slight, are strong, tall and straight, but this strength is rather suited to endure the exercise of the chase, than hard labour, by which



they are soon consumed. In some nations it is not uncommon to see the middle stature; the smallest degree of deformity, however, is rarely seen among any of them. The strength of their bodies, the extraordinary suppleness of their limbs, and the height which they attain may fairly be attributed to the liberty and exercise to which the children are accustomed from their earliest youth.

There is also a conformation of features as well as person, which, more or less characterises them all. The face is round, farther removed than that of any other people, from an oval shape. Their cheek-bones are a little raised, for this peculiarity the men are more distinguished than the women. Their forehead is small; the extremity of the ears far from the face; their lips thick; their noses are generally broad, with wide nostrils; their eyes are black, or of a chesnut colour, small, but capable of discerning objects at a great distance; their hair is thick and strong, without any tendency to curl; their ears large; their legs well formed, and the feet small. They have little or no beards on the face, which is not a natural deficiency, as some travellers have asserted, but an artificial deprivation, for they carefully eradicate the hair from every part of the body, except the head, and they confined that, in ancient times, to a tuft on the top.

One great peculiarity in the native Americans is their colour, and the identity of it throughout the whole extent of the continent, except the coasts of Labrador, as we have already mentioned. Their colour is that of copper; a colour which, as has been frequently observed, is peculiar to the Americans. "They are all," says Chevalier Pinto, "of a copper colour, with some diversity of shade, not in proportion to their distance from the equator, but according to the degree of the elevation of the country in which they reside. Those who live in a high country are fairer than those in the marshy low lands on the coast." It is said, however, and it is probable enough, that two small tribes have been lately discovered in Mexico, who differ considerably from all the other Indian nations, in colour and mode of living. We therefore quote the following article from the Western Democrat:

"It is a fact not generally known, that there do exist in the far west at least two small tribes or bands of white people. One of these bands is called Mawkeys. They reside in Mexico on the south west side of the rocky mountains, and between 300 and 500 miles from *Santa Fe*, towards California, and in a valley which makes a deep notch into the mountain, surrounded by high and impassible ridges, and which can only be entered by a narrow pass from the south west. They are represented by trappers and hunters of the west, known to the

write  
offen  
a gre  
them  
large  
by th  
witho  
Not f  
count  
hoes,  
They  
verac  
are o  
eyes,  
One o  
*Fe* in  
much  
Creek  
as wh  
wand  
was a  
hawk  
their  
signs,  
him in  
They  
ways  
vast nu  
B  
tinent  
we hes  
tion ex  
could b  
zation,  
Asia, n  
of Am  
Tartar  
nations  
the gre  
only in  
comple  
whose  
quest a  
as the  
be prov  
more c  
jecture

writer of this, to be men of veracity. to be an innocent and inoffensive people, who live by agriculture, while they also raise a great number of horses and mules, both of which are used by them for food. They cultivate maize, pumpkins and beans in large quantities. These people are frequently depredated upon by their more warlike red neighbours, to whom they submit without resorting to deadly weapons in order to repel them. Not far distant from the Mawkeys, and in the same range of country, is another band of the same description, called Nabbehoes, a description of either of these tribes will answer for both. They have been described to the writer by two men in whose veracity the fullest confidence may be placed; they say the men are of the common stature, with light flaxen hair, light blue eyes, and that their skin is of the most delicate whiteness. One of my informants, who saw seven of these people at *Santa Fe* in 1830, in describing the Mawkeys says, 'they are as much whiter than I am whiter than the darkest Indian in the Creek nation,' and my informant was of as good a complexion as white men generally are. A trapper on one occasion in a wandering excursion, arrived at a village of the Mawkeys. He was armed with a rifle, a pair of belt pistols, knife and tomahawk; all of which were new to them, and appeared to excite their wonder and surprise. After conversing some time by signs, he fired one of the pistols, when the whole group around him instantly fell to the ground in the utmost consternation. They entreated him not to hurt them and showed in various ways that they thought him a supernatural being. He saw vast numbers of horses and mules about the village."

Being fully convinced that America as well as the old continent had been peopled by different races, and at different times, we hesitate not a moment to believe that tribes of this description exist in the west; neither do we doubt but several more could be discovered who would exhibit a higher degree of civilization, than has been as yet witnessed among the red Indians. Asia, no doubt, contributed at different periods to the peopling of America with tribes of different degrees of civilization. The Tartars, Siberians and Kamschadales are of all the Asiatic nations with whom travellers are acquainted, those who bear the greatest resemblance to the North American Indians, not only in their manners and customs, but also in their features and complexion. The Tartars have always been known as a race whose disposition led them to rove and wander in quest of conquest and plunder. While the present Indians can be identified as the descendants of the Tartars or Siberians, and when it can be proved beyond a doubt that America was inhabited by a more civilized people than the present, it may fairly be conjectured that the original and more civilized inhabitants were

exterminated by some great revolution, which had, very probably, been effected by a Tartar invasion, similar to that which under Gengiskhan devastated the Chinese empire, and to that also which overwhelmed the Roman empire. But as we shall hereafter have a more favourable opportunity of discussing this subject in its proper place, we shall now pass over into Asia, in order to show how far the persons, features and complexion of some Asiatic tribes coincide with those of the North American Indians.

---

### PERSONS, FEATURES, AND COMPLEXION OF THE TONGUSI OF SIBERIA, IN ASIA.

“*I Tongusi*,” says the learned Padre Santini, a native of Italy, and a missionary in Chinese Tartary and Siberia, “*sono generalmente, alti, forti, flessibili e ben stretti; corrono con tanta velocita, che li ho veduto sovente volte soprapiungere i piu voloci animali della foresta. La corpulenza e la deformita di persona sono vizii, che si vedono rarissime volte fra questa gente, perche dalla loro gioventu si avvezzano alla caccia e alla guerra.*”

Here we are told by Santini, that the Tongusi are generally tall, athletic and straight; that they run with such velocity that he frequently saw them overtake the swiftest animal in the forest. Corpulency and deformity of person, he says, are blemishes which are seldom seen among them, because from their youth they are trained to the chase and war.

In speaking of the Coriacks and Kamschadales, Santini gives us the following description:

“*I Coriacki di Siberia, I Tongusi e i Kamschadali hanno, mi sembra, la medesima origine; poiche, sebbene le loro lingue non sono simili intieramente, nulladimeno hanno un legamento radicale, che e si chiara, che bisogna che tutte le tre siano stato le figlie della medesima madre. La somiglianza della figura del corpo e della fatezza detviso, e tanto evidente, che l'identita di stirpe non si puo dubitare, come si vedra adesso. Il viso e rotundo, le mascelle alzate, i labbri grassi, gli occhi piccoli e neri, la fronte non e grande; l'orecchi son grandi, i denti bianchi e i capelli son neri. Gli Indiani dell' America settentrionale, che aveva veduto a Quebec l'anno 1748 sono della stessa stirpe perche hanno il medesimo colore, viso e i loro costumi, lingua e religione sono assai somiglianti.*”

The Coriacks, Tongusi and Kamschadales, says Santini, it seems to me, have had the same origin; for, although their languages are not altogether the same, still their connexion is

so ra  
daugh  
visag  
ed.  
the e  
the te

whom  
the A  
comp  
guage

convin  
were t

christa  
must a  
every  
diligen  
since,  
identit  
at Rom  
the As  
his ass

two A  
Americ

rary m  
two or  
was at  
of their  
language

as was  
and the

ria in A

PART

AL

are spo  
tive lan  
follow t

language  
figurati  
north e  
ground  
the Nor

so radical that they must be mediately or immediately the daughters of the same mother. The similarity of person and visage is so striking that the identity of person cannot be doubted. Their faces are round, the cheek-bones high, the lips thick, the eyes small and black, the forehead small, the ears large, the teeth white and the hair black.

The Indians of North America, the same author continues, whom I saw at Quebec in 1748, must be of the same origin as the Asiatic tribes I have now described, they have the same complexion and visage; and their customs, religion and language are also very similar.

Of this resemblance in external appearance, we are fully convinced; for in 1826 two young princes of the Tongusi tribe were taken to Rome by two Jesuits, who converted them to the christian faith in their native country. Their complexion, we must acknowledge, was fairer than that of the Indians, but in every other respect there was a singular coincidence. The diligent antiquary, Count Rosetti, who travelled, some years since, in the United States, was perfectly satisfied with their identity, that he published on the arrival of the young princes at Rome, an able article for the society of antiquaries, proving the Asiatic origin of the North American Indians. To confirm his assertions he brought before the society of antiquaries, the two Asiatic princes and an Indian who accompanied him from America to Italy. During this inquiry some of the most literary men in Italy were present, and among them we observed two or three foreign ambassadors. The sameness of people was at once acknowledged by the society, not only on account of their similarity in external appearance, but the affinity of languages and the agreement of manners, habits and customs, as was satisfactorily proved from the researches of Count Rosetti, and the Jesuit missionaries who had arrived in Italy from Siberia in Asia.

---

#### PARTICULARITIES OF THE INDIAN LANGUAGES.

Although it is generally allowed that all the dialects which are spoken in North America, are derived from the three primitive languages, which we mentioned above, still it does not follow that these three are original or of the first institution of languages. The discourse of the Indian is so marked with those figurative expressions, for which some languages spoken in the north east parts of Asia are particularly noted. Upon this ground alone some persons stood forward to derive the origin of the North American Indians from Asia; and this clue should

be sufficient without any other proof to satisfy the philosophic mind, in the absence of a surer guide. The *Huron* language has a copiousness, an energy, and a sublimity perhaps not to be found united in any of the finest languages that we know. It has frequently been asserted, that those whose native tongue it is, are endowed with an elevation of soul, which agrees with the majesty of their language. Some have fancied they found in it some similitude with the Hebrew; others have said that it had the same origin as the Greek; but nothing could be more trifling than the proofs they bring forward. Gabriel Saghard imagined he had made wonderful discoveries in his vocabulary; James Cartier and Baron de la Hontan were equally enthusiastic in their researches. These three authors took at random some terms, some of which were Huron and other Algonquin, signifying quite different from what they asserted. They pretended from a similarity of sound in a few words, to have discovered a radical connexion between the Indian languages and the Hebrew.

The *Algonquin* language has not so much force as the *Huron*; but it has more sweetness and elegance, and may with great propriety be denominated the Italian of the western continent; for it abounds with vowels, which renders it soft, musical, and harmonious. Both the *Algonquin* and the *Huron* have a richness of expression, a variety of turns, a propriety of terms and a regularity which seldom prevails in some of the more cultivated languages of Europe.

In the *Huron*, all is conjugated; a certain device, which cannot be well explained, distinguishes the verbs, the nouns, the pronouns, the adverbs, &c. The simple verbs have a double conjugation, one absolute and the other reciprocal: the third persons have the two genders, for there are but two in these languages; that is to say, the noble and the ignoble gender. As to the number and tenses they have the same differences, as the Greek and some languages spoken in the north east of Asia: for instance, to relate travels, they express themselves differently according as it was by land or water. The verbs active multiply, as often as there are things which fall under action; as the verb which signifies *to eat* varies as many times as there are things to eat. The action is expressed differently in respect to any thing that has life, and an inanimate thing; thus, *to see a man*, and *to see a stone*, are two different verbs; to make use of a thing that belongs to him who uses it, or to him to whom we speak, are also two different verbs.

It may be said, and it is certainly true, that these languages from their richness and variety are attended with considerable difficulty in learning them, and it is no less certain that their poverty and barrenness on the other hand, render them equally

no.  
not b  
for th  
ledge  
for in  
use, c  
peans  
unacc  
their  
when  
not k  
advan  
is not  
he ne  
savage  
Deity  
other  
expect  
as wo  
matic  
is the  
been  
but fu  
giving  
in Ne  
name  
Huro  
by the  
a high  
plied  
of the  
which  
better  
circum  
form  
be the  
other  
place  
ing th  
to a s  
other  
betwe  
that a  
but b  
stanc  
Amer

10. When we speak of their poverty and barrenness, we must not be understood as alluding to the sterility of the languages; for the richness or poverty of a language depends on the knowledge or ignorance of the people who speak it. The Indians, for instance, seldom gave names to things which they did not use, or which did not fall under their senses, so that when Europeans conversed with them on subjects with which they were unacquainted, they were naturally in want of terms to express their ideas. Even the refined languages of Greece and Rome, when we speak of modern inventions and things which were not known in ancient times, are labouring under the same disadvantage; still they are not to be pronounced as barren, for it is not to be expected that man is to give names to things which he neither saw or heard of. In speaking to an Indian in his savage state, concerning religious worship, heaven and the Deity; about virtues, vices, and the cultivation of the arts, or other subjects of our common conversation, nothing could be expected but confused ideas and such a vacuity in his language as would require circumlocutions in order to throw any information within the compass of his understanding. Such, then, is the barrenness of the Indian languages, but as far as they have been cultivated, they are found to be not only rich in expressions but full of harmony and melody. Travellers have differed in giving names to the three primitive languages which are spoken in North America; they generally go, however, under the names of the *Siou*, the *Huron*, and the *Algonquin*. That of the Hurons is more copious and better cultivated than those spoken by the Algonquins and Sious, by reason of their having attained a higher degree of cultivation; for the Hurons have always applied themselves more than any other tribe, to the cultivation of the land. They have also extended themselves much less, which has produced two effects. In the first place, they are better settled, better lodged, and better fortified. Under these circumstances they could more easily cultivate the arts, and form fixed rules for their government. These would inevitably be the means of supplying their language with terms, which, otherwise, would never have been introduced. In the second place they became more industrious, more dexterous in managing their affairs; these improvements cannot be attributed but to a spirit of society, which they have preserved better than others. Notwithstanding the difference which evidently exists between these three primitive languages, it cannot be denied, that a radical connexion exists, which is not easily perceived but by those who are well versed in them.

Although we are fully satisfied from several other circumstances, as well as the affinity of languages, that the North American Indians are descended from the north east parts of



Asia, still we do not at all imagine that they are descendants of one and the same Asiatic tribe who spoke the same language. It may appear singular that there should exist such a dissimilarity in the languages which the north east Asiatics carried with them to America; but the surprise will at once vanish when we consider that the north east parts of Asia had been peopled by different races of men from different parts of Asia. The Highlanders of Scotland, it is well known, are of a different origin with their more southern neighbours; and their language which is likewise radically different, they have preserved in its purity, notwithstanding their union by local situation and inter-mariages. In every part of the new world where these Highlanders have made settlements, the Gaelic is spoken as purely almost as it came from the lips of Ossian; under similar circumstances, therefore, the Indians have been able to retain the languages of their respective progenitors. The same can be said of the Irish, Germans, and Dutch who migrated to America. It is not, therefore, to be wondered that there should exist among the Indians three primitive languages, which are very distantly connected, although they all came latterly from the north east parts of Asia.

Santini after collating the Indian languages with those spoken by the Coriacks and Tongusi, gives us the following particularities of these Asiatic tongues:

*“ Le lingue che si parlano dai Tongusi e i Coriaki di Siberia, sono originalmente uscite dalla medesima fonte; perche, avendo studiato tutte le due, sono capace di vedere l'affinita; oltre questo, ho osservato sovente volte che i Tongusi e Coriaki potevano parlare insieme senza alcuna interpretazione; e ciascheduno parlava nella lingua sua. Queste lingue hanno due generi, uno che si applica all'animante, e un altro all'inanimato. I verbi sono senza numero, e si aumentano secondo la varietade delle cose che si fanno e si vedono. Per esempio, un Coriako non si serve del medesimo verbo, quando vuol dire che ha veduto un uccello e un albero. Nella medesima maniera, si varia il verbo, quando dice, che ha bevuto dell'acqua o del vino. Il medesimo idioma si puo vedere nelle lingue che parlano gli Indiani Americani. Padre Chiuratesta, che era restato due anni in Kamschatka, ha detto e non si puo dubitare le sue parole, che quelli dall'altra parte del stretto di Beering, com'prendevano la lingua dei Kamschadali e che si vedevano frequentemente passare e ripassare da un continente all'altro.”*

The languages which are spoken by the Tongusi and Coriaks of Siberia, says Santini, have originally sprung from the same fountain. Having studied them both, the affinity appears to me to be very evident. Besides, I frequently observed the Tongusi and the Coriaks conversing together, while each used

hat I  
could  
petit  
their  
one is  
the o  
The  
the v  
does  
tree.  
they  
nues  
by the  
maine  
not be  
Beer  
were  
to the

credit  
as we  
wise g  
intima  
dignit  
their l  
thems  
of oth  
Santin  
larity  
and C  
North  
high o  
with  
sweet  
ges.  
Coria  
son w  
guage  
dian l

REL

preva  
mana



hat language which was spoken in his own country. They could not, certainly, understand each other easily, from the repetitions, gestures and circumlocutions which I observed during their conversation. Both languages have two genders; the one is called the noble, and is applied to animate things; and the other the ignoble, of which gender are inanimate things. The verbs are without number, and are increased according to the variety and quality of the action. For example, a Coriak does not use the same verb, when he says he saw a bird or a tree. In the same manner the Coriaks alter their verb, when they say they drank wine or water. The same idiom, continues Santini, is peculiar to some languages which are spoken by the North American Indians. Father Chiaratesta, who remained two years in Kamschatka, has said, and his word should not be doubted, that those on the American side of the straits of Bering understood the language of the Kamschadales, and were seen frequently to pass and repass from the one continent to the other.

These sources of information are certainly worthy of credit; for they are distinguished as men of the highest veracity, as well as profound judgment and acute imagination. It is likewise generally known that no person can contract a greater intimacy with barbarous nations, than missionaries, who, by the dignity of their sacred office, the affability of their manners, and their brotherly counsels, have always succeeded in endearing themselves to the rudest of nations. We have the testimony of other travellers, to corroborate the assertions of the learned Santini and Chiaratesta, while they endeavour to prove a similarity between the Indian languages and those of the Tongusi and Coriaks. Hennepin, who travelled among the Indians of North America, says, that the Huron language partakes in a high degree of the idiom of Asiatic tongues: that they abound with those figurative expressions, sublimity of thought and sweetness, which are so characteristic of some Asiatic languages. Abernethy collated two hundred Indian words with the Coriack language, and the identity is so evident that every person who is acquainted with the derivation and formation of languages, will at once acknowledge the Asiatic origin of the Indian languages.

---

#### RELIGION OF THE NORTH AMERICAN INDIANS.

Among the most savage nations in the world, the opinion prevails, that there are beings superior to themselves, who manage by their power and wisdom, the affairs of this world

The religion of the Indians is very simple, for it consists of few doctrines and fewer ceremonies. The Supreme Deity, they call the Great Spirit, whose power they believe to be infinite; to him they ascribe their victories in the field of battle and their success in the chase. They believe also in an inferior Spirit, whom they consider as a malevolent being and the author of all their misfortunes. They more frequently adore him, that he may remove the evils by which they are oppressed; still they are sometimes prompted by gratitude to perform an act of devotion to the Great Spirit, that he may continue his favours. They believe in a future state, where they are to enjoy in a more complete manner those pleasures in which they have here delighted; a mild climate, a fertile soil, abounding with game, whose flesh never cloy the appetite, nor surfeits by excess; the intercourse of all their friends and relations; in short, all their temporal enjoyments unmixed with any of their troubles.

L'Abbe' Perrin tells us that they have also their Priests, who are similar to the Druids of the ancients. These pretend to have a more intimate correspondence with the Deity, than any other mortal. They are, therefore, held in the highest estimation, because they can either conciliate the favour of the Great Spirit, or avert the wrath of the malevolent or inferior Deity. The Abbe observes, that as the Indians seldom engage in the solemnities of religion, the priesthood is not a lucrative profession; by professing, however, the gift of prophecy and the science of physic, they are seldom reduced to a state of indigence or want. Whenever the cures which they prescribe as physicians, prove unsuccessful, they have the policy to ascribe this failure to the evil Spirit, whose wrath they say is implacable from some motives which they are not allowed to divulge.

The only valuable part of their skill consists in their knowledge of simples, chiefly salubrious herbs, with which their country abounds. We are told by medical men who stand high in their profession, that these Indian herbists have, to their own knowledge, cured diseases of which they despaired. In administering these medicines, the Indians are said to use many ceremonies which are ridiculous, and sufficiently mysterious to acquire fame and veneration among the superstitious, especially if the patient recover, but if he die, the evil spirit is blamed.

The offices of priest, physician, and prophet or conjurer are generally hereditary. This belief is inculcated by those who profess these sciences; for they impose on the credulity of the people, by telling them, that their families have been particularly pointed out by the Great Spirit, who threatens vengeance early against those who might intrude on professions so sacred.

It has seldom or never been observed by travellers, that the

Indi  
how  
mad  
othe  
ness  
they  
They  
Whe  
Spiri  
troub  
conce  
touch  
offeri  
the H  
  
no ot  
luded  
Huro  
How  
ascer  
langu  
that A  
and A  
thoug  
nounc  
still i  
terms  
that th  
been i  
to the  
before  
rica.  
it coul  
have  
ideas,  
the la  
very  
the Gr  
sion of  
quest  
far fro  
to thos  
exquis  
whose  
turn to  
of the  
also th

Indians offered human sacrifices to either of the deities. It has, however, been frequently asserted that when an offering was made, it consisted generally of a dog; and this took place at no other time, except in the times of calamity, scarcity, and sickness. Having procured a suitable animal, generally a dog, they tie his mouth, without killing him, and singe him at the fire. They then affix him to a pole with a bundle of beaver skins. When the pole is erected the priest approaches, addresses the Spirit, deprecates his wrath, and implores a mitigation of their troubles. The tribe at the conclusion of his speech shout their concurrence. They then leave the dog and the pole, never touching them till they rot and fall. This ridiculous mode of offering a sacrifice was witnessed on many occasions among the Hurons, by Hennepin, Perin, and several other travellers.

The Indians have their *God of war* also, but this being is no other than the *Great Spirit*, to whom we have already alluded, and who is particularly invoked in their war songs. The Hurons call him *Areskoui*, and the Iroquois call him *Agreskoui*. How he is styled in the Algonquin, we have not been able to ascertain. But it is somewhat strange, that *Ares* in the Greek language is *Mars*, or the God of war; from this it would appear that *Ares* in Greek is the root whence *Areskoui* of the Hurons, and *Agreshoue* of the Iroquois must have been derived. Although we are not warranted from this similarity alone to pronounce an affinity between the Greek and Indian languages, still it appears probable enough that the Greek and Indian terms for the *God of war* had one common origin, if we allow that the early progenitors of the Greeks and Indians might have been intimately allied at some unknown remote period, previous to the establishment of colonies in the Grecian isles, and long before the arrival of any Asiatic tribe on the continent of America. If this opinion be well founded, and we do not see how it could be doubted, whatever alterations these languages may have undergone in the course of ages, by the multiplication of ideas, and consequently of words or by the revolutions which the languages of a civilized nations must undergo, it would be very unjust to deny the probability of some affinity between the Greek, Hebrew and Indian languages. After the dispersion of Babel, for instance, they might have set off together in quest of settlements. Notwithstanding this probability, we are far from believing that the Indians are consanguineously related to those Greeks, whose language rose into a fabric of the most exquisite and astonishing art, or to any of the tribes of Israel whose language was the Hebrew. Let us now, however, return to the Indian *God of war*. Before the battle and in height of the engagement, his name is the *war cry*; upon the march also they often repeat it, by way of encouragement to each

other, and to implore his assistance. L'Abbe Perin says, that before an Indian engagement, the warriors raise a most hideous yell, with which they address their *God of battles*, looking at the same time upwards, as if in the greatest solicitude to behold his mightiness in the heavens.

L'Abbe' de la Fontaine says, that when they are afraid of being conquered in battle, they send their supplications also to an evil Spirit, that he may be pleased to prevent their utter destruction; this they do with the greatest humility and submission, accompanied with resolutions and promises never to incur his wrath for the time to come. De la Fontaine admires and eulogizes the sublime language which they make use of on these solemn occasions: he compares their poetical and martial ideas to the lofty strains of Ossian, the famous bard of the ancient Celts.

### THE RELIGION OF THE TONGUSI, CORIAKS, AND KAMSCHADALES.

The most barbarous nations in the world believe in the existence of a being who is superior to themselves. Nature has never failed to indicate to the human mind, the existence of some Deity, who presides over the human race. Although man sees not his superior, yet the various revolutions which he sees take place around him inculcate the idea that there exists a Sovereign Lord, at whose control the world revolves.

The Mahometans, who borrowed their religious notions from the Jews and Christians, pretend that they are the great supporters of the doctrine of the unity of the Deity. Under a pretence of improvement, they impeach both the Jew and, Christian with a plurality of Deities. But it is well known, that the Jews and Christians make the unity of the Deity a fundamental doctrine of their religion. From these three sects, however, the doctrine of the unity of the Deity has been imparted to almost every nation and tribe with which we are acquainted. We do not, however, mean to say, that they have been solely the means of propagating this doctrine, for we are no less certain, that several nations with which we are utterly unacquainted and which never, perhaps, heard of revelation, entertain ideas of one Supreme Deity, with many inferior agents, similar to each other. Among those rude nations, the notion of a Supreme Being appears to have arisen from the force of human reason: the idea of his numerous inferior ministers seems to have originated in the imbecility of the human imagination. Notwithstanding this general belief of the unity of the Deity, which prevails almost

ever  
has i  
and r

Spiri  
are t  
differ  
sible

Asia,  
religio  
Tong  
Amer  
Tong  
preme  
or die  
imagin  
worsh  
and v  
solely  
lieve t  
As to  
for the  
damna  
enjoy t  
They  
sacrific  
consid  
supplic  
him a  
torment

T  
gine to  
in his o  
Greeks  
Ares o  
of the  
the san  
same t  
of Sibe  
We ca  
reason  
him A  
caused  
tions, n  
bly, ha  
away, c

every where, however rude the nation may be, every country has its own peculiarities in religion, as well as in their language and modes of living.

In no part of Asia, has the fancy multiplied more inferior Spirits, than in Hindostan. The spiritual agents of the Deity are there innumerable, and each of them is represented under different aspects; but to enumerate the whole would be impossible and superfluous on the present occasion.

From the researches of the most voracious travellers in Asia, we are informed, that of all the Asiatic nations, whose religious tenets they could ascertain with any accuracy, the Tongusi, Coriaks and Kamschadales resemble most the North American Indians, in their ideas concerning the Deity. "The Tongusi," says Abernethy, "believe in the existence of a supreme being, according to whose will they shall either conquer or die. They call him the *God of hosts*, because on him, they imagine, the fate of their warlike expeditions depends. They worship likewise an *infernal Demon*, whose attributes are wrath and vengeance; while they invoke him, they are influenced solely by fear, lest he may afflict or torment them, for they believe that from him all their calamities and misfortunes proceed. As to a future state, they are as charitable as the *Universalist*, for they cannot bear to hear of a future state of torments and damnation. On the other hand, they imagine that they are to enjoy all the pleasures after which they aspired in this world. They have their priests, prophets, and physicians; and their sacrifices consist generally of those brute animals which they consider the greatest favorites of the evil Spirit, for they seldom supplicate the *Great Spirit*, except before battle, as they deem him a benevolent Deity, who is disposed to favor, rather than torment them."

The Coriaks have a God of War, whose aspect they imagine to be fierce and sour, while terror is in his looks as well as in his dress. This *Mars* of the Romans, and the *Ares* of the Greeks, they call *Arioski*, a name which not only resembles the *Ares* of the Greeks, but is almost the very same as the *Areskoui* of the Hurons of America, an appellation which they apply to the same martial Deity. It appears rather singular that the same term for the *God of War* should be found in the Coriak of Siberia, the Greek and the Huron languages of America. We cannot, however, account for this identity of terms, more reasonably than we have already done. The Greeks called him *Ares*, either from the destruction and slaughter which he caused; or from the silence which is kept in war, where actions, not words, are necessary. This term may, very probably, have been derived from the Greek verb *airein*, to take away, or *anairein*, to kill. But from whatever words this name

is derived, it is certain that those famous names, *Areopagus* and *Areopagita*, are derived from *Ares*. The *Areopagus*, that is, the "hill" or "mountain" of Mars, was a place at Athens, according to the Greek Mythology, in which Mars being accused of murder, &c., was forced to defend himself before twelve gods, and was acquitted by six voices; from which time, that place became a court wherein were tried capital causes, and the things belonging to religion.

The Kamschadales, according to Santini, coincide with the Coriaks and Tongusi, almost in every point of religion, except the offering of sacrifices. They believe in a supreme and benevolent being, whose sole care it is to watch over their interests, provided they do not incur the displeasure of the evil spirit, who is always disposed to punish them when they offend him.

#### DRESS AND ORNAMENTS OF THE NORTH AMERICAN INDIANS.

It has always been observed that all the various tribes have a close resemblance in their dress; that of the North American Indians in their original state, consists entirely of furs and hides; one piece is fastened round the waist, which reaches the middle of the thigh, and another larger piece is thrown over the shoulders. Their stockings are of skins, fitted to the shape of the leg; the seams are ornamented with porcupines' quills; their shoes are of the skin of the deer, elk, or buffalo, dressed for the most part with the hair on; they are made to fasten about the ancles, where they have ornaments of brass or tin, about an inch long, hung by thongs. The women are all covered from the knees upwards. Their shifts cover their body, but not the arms. Their petticoats reach from the waist to the knees; and both are of leather. Their shoes and stockings are not different from those of the men. Those men who wish to appear gay, pluck the hair from their heads, except a round spot of about two inches diameter on the crown of the head; on this are fastened plumes of feathers with quills of ivory or silver. The peculiar ornaments of this part are the distinguishing marks of the different nations. They sometimes paint their faces black, but oftener red; they bore their noses and slit their ears, and in both they wear various ornaments. The higher ranks of women dress their hair sometimes with silver in a peculiar manner; they sometimes paint it. They have generally a large spot of paint near the ear, on each side of the head, and not unfrequently a small spot on the brow. The



Indians, it is true, have made several improvements in their dresses, since they commenced to receive European commodities. The picture, however, which we have given, is not so perfect an image of the Indians as the following portrait by the Bishop of Mieux :

“ The colours with which they paint their faces, and the grease with which they rub all their bodies, produce the same advantages, and as they fancy give them the same good appearance, as pricking, of which we shall speak hereafter. The warriors paint themselves when they take the field, to intimidate their enemies, perhaps also to hide their fear, for we must not think that they are all exempt from it. The young people do it to conceal an air of youth, or a paleness remaining after some distemper, which may, they are apprehensive be taken for the want of courage; they do it also, no doubt, to make them look handsome, but on this occasion the colours are more lively and more varied. It is said, that they paint the prisoners who are going to die, and for what purpose we have not been informed; it has been thought, however, by some, that it is to adorn the victim, who is to be sacrificed to the God of war. The dead are also painted, in order, no doubt, to hide the paleness of death which disfigures them, for they are at the same time dressed in their finest robes to meet the Great Spirit, with whom they are to live for ever.

“ The colours which they use on these occasions are the same which they employ to dye skins, and they make them from certain earths and barks of trees. They are not very lively, still they are not easily worn out. The men add to this ornament the down of swans or other birds, which they strew on their hair after it has been greased, like powder. They add to this, feathers of all colours and bunches of hair of divers animals, all placed in an odd manner. The placing of their hair, sometimes standing up like bristles on one side, and flatted on the other, or dressed in a thousand different ways, pendants in their ears and sometimes in their nostrils, a great shell of porcelain hanging about their neck, or in their breast, some crowns made of the plumage of scarce birds, the claws, the feet, or heads of birds of prey, little horns of roebucks, and innumerable other things constitute their finery.

“ The men, we see, take little pains to adorn any other part of the body but their heads, which is just the reverse with the women, for they scarcely wear any thing on it. They are certainly fond of their hair, and they would consider themselves disgraced if any part of it was cut off. To preserve their hair they grease it often and powder it with the dust of spruce bark, and sometimes with vermilion; then they wrap it up in the skin of an eel or serpent, in the fashion of whiskers, which hang



down to their waist. As to their faces, they are satisfied with tracing some lines on them with vermilion or other colours.

" Their nostrils are never bored, and it is only among some nations that they bore their ears; then they wear in them pendants, as do also the men, made of beads of porcelain. When they are dressed in all their finery, they have robes painted with all sorts of figures, with little collars of porcelain, set on without any order or symmetry, with a kind of border tolerably worked with porcupine's hair, which they paint also with various colours. They adorn in the same manner the cradles of their children, and they load them with all sorts of trinkets: these cradles are made of light wood, and have at the upper end one or two semicircles of cedar, that they may cover them without touching the head of the child.

" Many men make various figures all over their bodies, by pricking themselves, others only in some parts. They do not do this merely for ornament, for they find also, as it is said, great advantages by this custom. It serves greatly to defend them from the cold, renders them less sensible of the other injuries of the air, and frees them from the persecution of the Gnats. But it is only in countries possessed by the English, especially in Virginia, that the custom of pricking themselves all over the body, is very common. In *New France* the greatest part are satisfied with some figures of birds, serpents, or other animals, and even of leaves, and such like figures, without order or symmetry, but according to every one's fancy, often in the face, and some times even on the eyelids. Many women are marked in the parts of the face that answer to the jaw-bones, to prevent the tooth-ache.

" This operation is not painful in itself. It is performed in this manner: They begin by tracing on the skin, drawn very tight, the figure they intend to make; then they prick little holes close together with the fins of a fish, or with needles, all over these traces, so as to draw blood. Then they rub them with charcoal dust, and other colours, well ground and powdered. These powders sink into the skin, and the colours are never effaced; but soon after the skin swells, and forms a kind of scab, accompanied with inflammation. It commonly excites a fever; and if the weather is too hot, or the operation has been carried too far, there is hazard of life."

These are the observations of the Bishop of Micux, who travelled in North America, at the request of the Queen of France.

DRE

"  
the no  
attired  
rude n  
furs an  
garme  
bears  
though  
From  
deer o  
These  
Tongu  
well ac  
any pa  
of the  
genera  
sent the  
disting  
of petti  
is mad  
themsel  
of color  
of prick  
rubbing  
"  
more w  
the san  
handson  
"  
rally lo  
The pe  
are pain  
colour;  
without  
Their w  
they pa  
"  
tinues,  
their ne  
to the I  
society,  
to say,  
Coriaks  
been eff

## DRESS AND ORNAMENTS OF THE TONGUSI, CORIAKS, AND KAMSCHADALES.

"The Tongusi, Coraiks, Kamschadales and other tribes in the north east parts of Asia," says Abernethy, "are differently attired from what they were a century ago. Like every other rude nation in their original state, they covered themselves with furs and hides like the shepherds of Spain and Italy, the upper garment consisted of one piece, with a hood and sleeves; it bears also some resemblance to the dress of Capuchin Menks, though not so long, for it reaches not further than the knee. From the knee downwards, they are covered with leggins of deer or buffalo skin; their shoes also are made of the same. These robes were formerly dressed with the hair on, but the Tongusi especially, and the Coriaiks, have made themselves so well acquainted with the art of tanning, that hair is not seen in any part of their dress, except the hood, the neck, and the cuffs of the sleeves of the upper garment. The tanned covering is generally painted with considerable taste. The figures represent those animals which have been chosen by each tribe as their distinguishing marks. In the summer season, they wear a kind of petticoat round the waist which comes down to the knees; it is made of coarse linnen or cotton, which they manufacture themselves. At this time they paint their bodies with a variety of colours. The process of thus adorning themselves, consists of pricking those parts of the body which are not covered, and rubbing them over with different colours.

"The warriors paint their faces that they may appear more warlike. Others who are not engaged in hostilities do the same, because, I suppose, they imagine they look more handsome.

"They take great pains to dress their hair, which is generally long and oily, by reason of being smeared with grease. The pendants in their ears and nostrils are usually shells which are painted on one side with a red, and on the other with a blue colour; but they never consider themselves in their full uniform without a crown made of the plumage of a bird called the *rotoo*. Their women may be said to follow the same practices, although they pay very little attention to their hair."

"The inhabitants of Kamschatka," the same author continues, "have preserved their ancient dress better than any of their neighbouring tribes, because, although they are tributary to the Russian empire, they are farther removed from civilized society, without alluding particularly to their dress, I have only to say, that they were anciently clad in the same manner, as the Coriaiks and Tongusi, notwithstanding the difference which has been effected by the novelty of the fashions of modern times.

tified with  
colours.

among some  
them pen-  
in. When  
painted with  
on without  
ably worked  
various col-  
les of their  
kets: these  
per end one  
em without

r bodies, by  
y do not do  
said, great  
efend them  
r injuries of  
gnats. But  
specially in  
all over the  
est part are  
er animals,  
der or sym-  
he face, and  
e marked in  
to prevent

performed in  
rawn very  
little holes  
es, all over  
them with  
powdered.  
are never  
nd of scab,  
es a fever;  
en carried

lieux, who  
Queen of

Santini says almost the same : *“ Quanto all' abito dei Tongusi, eglino e tutte le altre nazioni barbare hanno quasi il medesimo vestito, che consiste delle pelle di bestie fiere. Quest' abito e semplicemente accomodato al corpo, o adornato con ornamenti secondo il grado di civilizzazione fra quella gente. I Tongusi andavano, una volta, vestiti in pelli; depingevano il corpo e la fuciu con differenti colori. Pertuggiavano il naso e gli orecchii, dove si impicavano dei nichii coloriti. Hanno una corona fatta delle piume dei piu belli e rari uccelli, specialmente i pavoni. Ogni parte del loro vestito era abbellata colle penne del porco spinoso. Le loro scarpe per l'inverno sono due piedi di lunghezza : son fatte per camminare sulla neve ; la loro figura e ovale : con queste fanno lungi viaggi ; sono leggeri perche il suolo di queste scarpe e composto d' une rete di cordicelle che son fatti della pelle di qualche animale.”*

Santini tells us here that the dress of every barbarous nation as well as that of the Tongusi is generally made of the skin of wild beasts. This dress is simply fitted to the form and shape of the body, or it is adorned with various ornaments according to the degree of civilization which these nations have arrived at. The Tongusi in their original state of barbarity were dressed in skins ; they painted their bodies and faces with various colours ; they bored their noses and ears whence hang coloured shells. For their head covering they had crowns made of the skin of a young deer, ornamented with the plumage of rare birds, especially the peacock. Every part of their dress was embellished with coloured porcupine quills ; they had shoes particularly suited for the winter, in order to traverse the snowy plains more easily ; their length was about two feet. From the lightness and structure of these shoes they were able to perform long journies. The soles consisted of a net made of strings of a raw hide.

The Asiatic snow shoes are to be seen in the museum of St. Ignatius's college at Rome ; for Santini took several pair of them with him from Siberia. La Perouse and Lisseps found the snow shoe in Tartary. Count Buonaventura observes how serviceable they are to the Siberians. Rosetti has a pair of them in his collection of antiquities ; these he found among the Hurons of North America. Rosetti compared his Indian dress, in which he appeared once at a masquerade ball at Rome, with the dresses of the two Tongusian princes, the converts of Santini, and the resemblance was striking.

Santini in speaking of the shirts which are introduced in the modern dress of the Tongusi, makes the following observation :

*“ Ho sempre osservato, che i Tongusi, almeno la maggior*

par  
che  
time  
men  
van  
wear  
waiste  
but he  
or var  
T  
custon  
attach

MA

N  
unacqu  
are co  
seldom  
of their  
press a  
is short  
game, t  
fancies  
bation  
he next  
this sig  
and the  
ted to c  
a secre  
withou  
rally c  
returns  
new om  
main w  
game b  
TH  
are wil  
returns  
takes t  
separat  
adulter  
her hair

*parte degli uomini, hanno due camicie nell' abito moderno, una che sta sempre presso alla pelle, e un' altra copre il primo vestimento. La ragione di questo costume non conosco, nulladimeno alcuni mi hanno detto che era originato d'un motivo di vanità."*

According to Santini, the Tongusi, in their modern dress, wear two shirts, one next their skin and another over their waistcoat. How this custom originated he could not ascertain; but he says he was told by some that they did it through pride or vanity.

Those who are acquainted with the manners, habits and customs of the North American Indians, must be aware of their attachment also to wear a shirt over their waistcoat.

### MARRIAGE AMONG THE NORTH AMERICAN INDIANS.

None of the North American tribes, however rude, were unacquainted with the institution of marriage. They generally are contented with one wife, they sometimes take two, and seldom more than three. The women are under the direction of their fathers in the choice of a husband, and very seldom express a predilection for any particular person. Their courtship is short and simple. The lover makes a present, generally of game, to the head of that family to which belongs the woman he fancies. Her guardian's approbation being obtained, an approbation which, if the suitor is an expert hunter, is seldom refused; he next makes a present to the woman, and her acceptance of this signifies her consent. The contract is immediately made, and the match concluded. As soon as he chooses he is admitted to cohabitation; but the time of the consummation is always a secret to every one but themselves. All this is transacted without ceremony, without even a feast. The husband generally carries his wife among his own relations, where he either returns to the tent which he formerly inhabited, or constructs a new one for their own use. They sometimes, but seldom, remain with the wife's relations. When the wife is removed, if the game be plentiful, he gives an entertainment to her relations.

These contracts are binding no longer than both parties are willing. If they do not agree they separate; the woman returns to her relations, and, if they have any children, she takes them along with her; but after they have children, a separation very seldom takes place. If a woman be guilty of adultery, and her husband be unwilling to divorce her, he cuts her hair which is the highest female disgrace.

On the woman is devolved every domestic charge. She erects the tent, procures wood for the fire, manages the agricultural affairs, dresses the provisions, catches fish, and makes traps for small animals. The husband only employs himself in the chase.

When a woman is with child; she works at her ordinary occupations, convinced that work is advantageous both for herself and child; her labour is easy, and she may be seen on the day after her delivery with her child at her back, avoiding none of her former employments. They suckle their children till they are at least two years of age. Their cradle was anciently a board, to which they laced their children, after having wrapped them in furs, to preserve them in heat. This is set down in a corner, or hung up in the tent, and without loosing it from its cradle, the mother often takes it on her back, and in that manner carries it about.

Among the Indians, widows cannot contract a second marriage without the consent of those on whom they depend, in virtue of the laws of widowhood. If they can find no husband for the widow, she finds herself under no difficulties; if she has any sons of an age to support her, she may continue in a state of widowhood, without danger of ever wanting any thing; if she is willing to marry again, she may, and the man she marries becomes the father of her children: he enters into all the rights and obligations of the first husband.

The husband does not weep for his wife, because, according to the savages, tears do not become men; but this is not general among all nations. The women weep for their husbands a year; they call him without ceasing, and fill their village with cries and lamentations, especially at the rising and setting of the sun, at noon, in some places when they go out to work, and when they return. Mothers do much the same for their children. The chiefs mourn only six months, and may afterwards marry again.

La Roche was once entertained in the following manner, at the nuptials of a Huron Chief:

"Next morning the father and his sons proposed to conduct us down the river in their canoes to a certain place, where they assured us, we would be entertained with all the ancient amusements of the Indians; because their chief a young man of about 19 years of age, was to take to himself a wife from among the white people. To this proposal we gave our consent, a small fleet of canoes were now riding on the river and waiting our arrival. The ladies who accompanied us were at first as timorous as the mountain shepherd, when first he embarks on the billows of a fathomless ocean. They insisted that the Indians should set off alone for a short distance, before they

would venture into skills so fragile and so apparently insecure.

"The athletic youths no sooner heard the word *start*, than a well-contested race ensued; a boy of about 14 years came off victorious; he was the son of him by whom we were entertained the night previous to our excursion. Having witnessed the extraordinary dexterity which the Indians displayed in managing their canoes, the ladies were so satisfied with the skill of the Indian mariners, that they hesitated not a moment to embark.

"The morning was clear and serene, and the water smooth as a sheet of glass. The Count in order to apprise the settlement of our arrival, as they were notified the previous night to assemble in a certain place on the banks of the river, sounded the key bugle, which had a charming effect on the water and re-echoed from hill to hill. Soon a vocal concert was commenced by the venetian dames, which ravished our ears with the most melodious harmony. The paddling oars now stood motionless, as if the Indians were enchanted with the song; but the gentle stream bore us down amid hills and dales. Still sweeter were the autumnal strains of the warblers of the grove, which cheered the birchen fleet as they passed by their choir. As we glided along the verdant banks of the murmuring stream, where the varied beauties of nature graced the neat cottages which peeped through the grove, we soon observed the favored spot, where the Indians had assembled. A universal cheer pervaded the assemblage as we landed. The bride and bridegroom stood alone; she was dressed in silken robes, the dress of modern days, for she was a *Canadienne*, while he in the fierceness of ancient times wore the garb of an Indian chief.

"The mountain due had no sooner gone round than the celebration of the nuptials commenced with the *war dance*. Four songsters or bards were selected from among them, and two drummers who formed their musical band. As the songs commenced and the drums were beaten, the ring was all in motion. The happy couple were now in the centre of the ring and performed the same motions. Twenty-five couples moved in a circular line. Their dance resembled a trotting cheval, while that of the Squaws is not very unlike a favourite dance among the Europeans, called the *Hornpipe*; for they move onwards and keep their toes and heels alternately close together, without leaping to the cadence of the music. After the dance was over, they began to practice their national athletic exercises, as if celebrating the olympic games of the Greeks. In running they displayed an extraordinary agility of limbs. They would, I have no doubt, excel the swiftest that ever ran on the Grecian sands. In leaping they would not be inferior to *Diomedes*, for I saw them leap, with a run, seven and



twenty feet. But what most astonished us was, their celerity in gaining the summit of a very steep hill, almost perpendicular. The squirrels themselves could scarcely surpass them in climbing the lofty and branchless pine. Like an Arabian charger, they ran at full speed towards the river, and stopt instantly at the very brink of an elevated bank. When all the performances were ended, they sat down on the green turf to feast on the venison which the bridegroom had procured; for it is usual among the Indians, that the bridegroom must furnish on his wedding, game sufficient to entertain his friends.

“The mountain dew was circulated in abundance, and more enthusiastic cheers than those with which they drank the healths of the newly married couple, I never witnessed. Having signified our departure after dinner, an elderly man, the chief of a tribe, stepped out of the ranks and addressed us with a mournful but manly air, in the following tender manner, which he ordered to be interpreted to us :

“Take with you our hearts’ warm thanks and blessings, for you are possessed of liberal and generous souls. May the journey of your life be in the sunshine and smiles of fortune. May soft breezes waft your bark on a smooth sea to your native shore. May your footsteps tread on the green grass, and may the violet and the rose spring up under you feet whithersoever you go.’

“We took our leave of the grateful Indians, congratulating ourselves on our successful adventures. This excursion will, I am sure, form a golden subject for the *conversazioni* of Venice; for Donabella failed not to depict every scene. In the evening we retired to the house of an English gentleman. His elegant cottage stood on a lofty cliff which commanded a pleasing prospect at eventide. When the last ray of the golden light was illuminating the west, we took our seat on the side of a hill: here we sat and mused till the pale moon broke through the clouds and tipped the waters beneath with its soft and silvery light, while the forest tops were tinged with the light moonshine. Before us opened in a contracted view, the dark and lonely woods; through them whispered a gentle breeze, such as the mournful echo of some distant flute. Beneath we beheld a serpentine stream which broke through the shade of a dark and distant forest; on its limpid waters were mirrored the silver moon and the celestial orbs. As it greeted with a murmuring voice the height whence we gazed, and rolled along in the silence of night, to pursue its nocturnal course, we were reminded of the journey of our life and the time which glides along, never to return. The nuptial feast was still continued on the plains beneath, and well might we say with the poet,



“Blest are those feasts with simple plenty crown'd,  
 Where the rural family around,  
 Boast of the blessings of the lowly train,  
 Which the rich deride and the proud disdain,  
 To them more dear, congenial to their hearts  
 One native charm, than all the gloss of art:  
 Spontaneous joys, where nature has its play,  
 The soul adopts and owns their first born sway;  
 Lightly they frolic o'er the vacant mind,  
 Unenvy'd, unmolested, unconfin'd.”

“Between the hours of nine and ten we hastened home by the light of the moon, to muse on the excursion of the day and the pleasures of the evening view.”

It appears, therefore, that the Indians have also their merriments on occasions of this sort; although their marriages go off more commonly without any ceremony.

There are in all nations some considerable families, which cannot marry but among themselves, especially among the Algonquins. In general, the stability of marriages is sacred in this country, and for the most part they consider, as a great disorder, those agreements which some persons make to live together as long as they like, and to separate when they are tired of each other. A husband who should forsake his wife, without any lawful cause, must expect many insults from her relations; and a woman who should leave her husband without being forced to it by his ill conduct, would pass her time still worse.

Among the Miamis, the husband has a right to cut off his wife's nose if she runs away from him; but among the Iroquois and the Hurons, they may part by consent. This is done without noise, and the parties thus separated may marry again. They cannot even conceive that there can be any crime in this. “My wife and I cannot agree together,” said one of them to a missionary who endeavoured to make him comprehend the indecency of such a separation; “my neighbour's case was the same, we changed wives and we were all happy; for nothing is more reasonable than to make each other happy, when it is so cheaply done without wronging any body.” Nevertheless, this custom, as we have already observed, is looked upon as an abuse, and is not ancient, at least among the Iroquois.

Among some nations of the Indians, treaties of marriages are carried on by the parents alone. The parties interested do not appear at all; they give themselves up entirely to the will of those on whom they depend; however, the parents come to no conclusion without the consent of those who are to be married.

If a girl continues too long without being courted, her family generally contrive to find her a suitor. On this occa-

sion they act with a great deal of precaution. In some places the women are not in haste to be married, because they are allowed to make trials of it when they can, and the ceremony of marriage only changes their condition for the worse.

In general there is a great deal of modesty observed in the behaviour of the young people whilst they treat of their marriages; and they say that it was quite otherwise in ancient times. But what is almost incredible, although it has been attested by good authors, is, that in many places the new married couple are together a whole year, living in a perfect continence. This they do in order to shew that they married for friendship, and not to gratify a sensual passion. A young woman, they say, would even be pointed at, who should happen to be with child the first year of her marriage.

After this it will be easier to believe what is said of the behaviour of the young people during their courtship, in the places where they are allowed to see one another in private. For though custom allows them to hold very private meetings, yet in the greatest danger that chastity can be exposed to, and even under the veil of night, they say, that nothing passes against the rules of the strictest decorum, and that not even a word is spoken that can give the least offence to modesty.

Although we have already alluded to the ceremonies of marriages, still, perhaps, it may not be improper to offer the following observations of a missionary who resided a long time amongst the Indians:—"I find in all that has been written of the preliminaries and ceremonies of the marriages of these people, various accounts proceeding either from the different customs of divers nations, or from the little care the authors of relations took to be well informed. The intended husband must make presents, and in this as in every thing else, nothing can exceed the discretion with which he behaves, and the respectful behaviour which he shows to his future spouse. In some places the young man is contented to go and sit by the side of the young woman in her cabin, and if she suffers it and continues in her place, it is taken for her consent, and the marriage is concluded. But in the midst of this deference and respect, he gives some tokens that he will soon be master. In fact among the presents she receives, there are some which ought less to be regarded as marks of friendship, than as symbols and notices of the slavery to which she is going to be reduced; such are the *collar*, which is a long and broad band of leather which serves to draw burdens, the *kettle* and a *billet* which are carried to her cabin. This is to let her know, that she is to carry the burdens, dress the provisions, and get wood for firing. The custom is also in some places for her to bring before hand into the cabin, where she is to dwell after marriage, all the

wood  
ed, the  
the na  
where  
These  
the sta  
of it, w  
a cond  
before  
husban

MAR

"  
ceremo  
the offi  
intende  
riage is  
and spe  
are oth  
occasic  
tion.  
while c  
ment.  
to asce  
is a su  
his' wif  
weeks,

"  
for the  
hunting  
wife;  
rearing  
the bri  
ded; a  
takes p  
her des  
ever, is  
often  
Among  
marry  
consen  
turns i  
the sla

wood that will be wanted next winter. And it is to be observed, that in all I have just said, there is no difference between the nations, where the women have all the authority, and those where they have nothing to do with the affairs of government. These same women who are in some degree the mistresses of the state, at least for form, and who make the principal body of it, when they have attained a certain age, and have children in a condition to make them respectable, are not at all respected before this, and are in their domestic affairs the slaves of their husbands."

---

### MARRIAGE AMONG THE TONGUSI, CORIAKS, AND KAMSCHADALES.

"In the marriage of the Tongusi," says Abernethy, "many ceremonies are used, but the principal and indispensable one is, the offering of a plate of corn or some game to the bride by her intended husband. Among several tribes of the Tongusi, marriage is attended with dancing, music, and a variety of games and sports which sometimes continue for several days. There are others who do not exhibit any mark of rejoicing on these occasions. Their courtship is generally of a very short duration. Among some, the contract is conducted by their parents, while others allow the lovers to choose and come to an agreement. They frequently bestow presents on each other, in order to ascertain each others minds, for the acceptance of these gifts is a sure mark of their consent. The husband generally takes his wife among his own relations, where she spends several weeks, and is entertained with kindness and hospitality.

"If the husband be a hunter, which is generally the case, for the greater part of them procure their subsistence either by hunting or fishing, every domestic charge is devolved on the wife; still there are some who attend to agriculture and the rearing of cattle. Nothing can exceed the modesty which both the bride and bridegroom assume on the night they are wedded; and I have also been told that a separation frequently takes place a week or two after they are married, by reason of her desire to live four weeks in perfect continence. This, however, is not generally true, for I observed that chastity was very often violated, among them, before they are legally united. Among the Coriaks there are many tribes or families who never marry but among themselves. Here the woman signifies her consent by keeping the present which he sends her; if she returns it, he never sends it to another. Although the women are the slaves of their husbands in the domestic affairs, still they are

very much respected when they attain a certain age, and they even contribute to conduct the affairs of government, under the title of the *Mistresses of the State*. Their contracts of marriage are binding no longer than both parties are willing. If a separation takes place, the mother takes the children with her to her relations; however, it is not a common thing to see them separate after they have children."

Santini tells us that he was once entertained by the Kamschadales at the celebration of the nuptials of a Kamschadalian Chief. His description of the merry festivities corresponds with the Olympic games which were observed among the Hurons of North America on a similar occasion :

"Era annunciato fra tutte le famiglie chi appartenevano al principe, che le nozze del loro principale fossero celebrate il giorno seguente. Tutte le signore e signori del paese si appa-  
"rechiavano all' allegrezza sopra un monte vicino al capo della nazione. Nella mattina del giorno nominato vi era una grande compagnia nel luogo dove si devono radunare. Avevano dei musici e dei cantatori di guerra. Danzavano con movimenti circolari. Il sposo e la sposa stavano nel mezzo e cantavano una canzone per la loro futura felicità. Dopo questo cominciavano a correre, saltare, e scoccare dei dardi; Questa scena mi ridusse alla memoria gli esercizi dei Greci antichi. Quest' usanza di festeggiamenti ai sponsalizi non si trova per tutto questo paese. Soventemente vanno insieme senza alcun cerimonia, dopo che si ottiene il consenso dei parenti. Quando fanno l'amore, che non sarà lungo tempo, si regola qualche cosa dall' uomo alla donna, e l'accettazione di questo è un certo indizio dell' approvazione."

"It was announced," says Santini, "among the relations of the prince, that his nuptials were to be celebrated the following day. All the damsels and young men, and the old of both sexes prepared themselves for the approaching festivities. Agreeably to the request, crowds were seen repairing to the favored spot, which was the summit of a beautiful hill in the immediate vicinity of the residence of the chief, the intended spouse. Musicians and *singers of war* were there to inspire their minds with mirth and sentiments of bravery and heroism. Having formed a ring round the wedded couple, who at this time sang a song for their own future happiness and prosperity, they danced and moved in a circular way. The dance was then superseded by their athletic exercises, which consisted in running, leaping, and shooting arrows. The scene at once reminded me of the Olympic games of the ancient Greeks. These rejoicings and amusements at the marriages of the Kamschadales are not at all general. In some parts of this country they frequently go together without any ceremony, if the consent of their parents be

obtai  
time  
whic

WA

war.  
us be  
Accus  
with a  
in the  
the In  
tracts  
tain b  
or to a  
in for

the m  
arins a  
club is  
of flint  
with l  
bows a  
these  
These

W  
that wa  
to take  
say, "  
their sp  
honour  
our bro  
slain.  
Anoint  
the fore  
dead, a

Th  
to be le  
leader p  
convers  
to conc  
malevol  
which g  
that th

obtained. Their courtship commonly lasts no longer than the time which is consumed in sending a present to the woman, which, if she accepts of it, is a mark of her approbation."

## WAR AMONG THE NORTH AMERICAN INDIANS.

The youths of these various tribes are much addicted to war. While we thus express ourselves in the present tense, let us be understood as describing the Indian some centuries ago. Accustomed to hear the exploits of their forefathers related with admiration, they become impatient to signalize themselves in the same career. The usual avowed causes of war among the Indians, are to secure their right of passing through certain tracts of country; to assert their right of hunting within certain bounds; to maintain their claims to their own territories; or to avenge the death of such of their tribe, as may have fallen in former conflicts.

Every tribe has a band of warriors. This consists of all the males of the nation, from 15 years of age to 60. Their arms are bows and arrows, and a war club. The head of this club is about three inches and a half in diameter, with an edge of flint or steel fixed in one side of it. Since their intercourse with Europeans, they have substituted the musket, for their bows and arrows, and the tomahawk for their war club; to these they have now added a scalping knife, and a dagger. These warriors are under the command of the war chief.

When the assembly of chiefs and elders have determined that war is necessary, they endeavour to persuade the warriors to take arms. "The bones of our deceased countrymen," they say, "lie uncovered; they cry to us to avenge their wrongs; their spirits must be appeased. The invisible guardians of our honour inspire us with a resolution to seek the murderers of our brothers. Let us go and devour those by whom they were slain. Sit not, therefore, inactive. Give way to your valour. Anoint your hair. Paint your faces. Fill your quivers. Make the forests resound with your songs. Console the spirits of the dead, and tell them they shall be avenged."

The warriors immediately raise the war song, and demand to be led against the enemy. The chief who is to be their leader paints himself black: fasts several days and avoids all conversation with those of the tribe. By this means he means to conciliate the favour of the *Great Spirit* and to avert the malevolence of the *evil one*. He carefully observes his dreams which generally portend success. Some people have fancied that this fasting arose from a desire to accustom themselves to



hunger; but according to their own notions, we are informed, that they do it purely from a religious motive. It is no less certain also that they esteem their dreams as real oracles and notices from heaven. Those Indians who are in any trouble of mind, it is said, frequently lie down to sleep in order to communicate with these oracles.

Having fasted the appointed time, he takes a belt of wampum in his hand, and addresses his warriors, informing them of all the motives for the war, and of the success which the *Great Spirit* has promised to their arms. He then lays down the belt, and he who takes it up is second in command. The chief removes the black paint, and is painted red. He sings the war song and makes a devotional address to the Great Spirit, in which he is joined by all the warriors. They then perform the war dance, and conclude with a feast of dog's flesh. The chief, though he has fasted so long, seldom partakes of this feast; he recounts the valiant actions of himself and his ancestors. From this time till their departure on their expedition, every day is spent in preparation, and every night in feasting.

A hatchet painted red is sent to the nation which they are to attack. This is the declaration of war; a dangerous commission, which is generally discharged by a slave, and often proves fatal to him.

When the Indians set out on their march, a mat is all they take besides their arms. They maintain themselves on their way by hunting. If not near the enemy's country, they are quite unguarded, separating in small parties during the day, for the convenience of hunting; but taking care at night, to return to their camp, which is pitched before sunset. By the sun and their knowledge of the country, they direct their different routes so well, that they never fail of meeting at the appointed place. When they have entered the enemy's country, a very different conduct is observed; circumspection now attends the minutest actions. The game is no longer pursued; fires are not lighted; they are not even permitted to speak; they converse by signs; they are sensible that they themselves have much sagacity in discovering an enemy, and they rightly conclude, that their enemies have no less. The Indians, indeed, possess a degree of sagacity, in this respect, which can scarcely be conceived by civilized nations. At a very great distance, they discover habitations by the smell of the fire. They perceive the track of a foot on the smoothest grass, and on the hardest substance. From the track they discover, with amazing certainty, the nation, the sex, the stature of the person who has passed, and the time that has elapsed since the track was formed. It is not easy to avoid an enemy so sagacious. It becomes the great concern of both parties, therefore, to conceal their own traces and dis-

cover  
use al  
treadi  
carefu  
they d  
effectu  
as they  
night,  
succeed  
discov  
whisper  
Immed  
ries ar  
approa  
The ch  
dischar  
they ru  
nage.  
seldom  
is pure  
H  
would  
rest pr  
twisting  
the pers  
dextero  
monum  
vision  
wronge  
cause of  
their ov  
use the  
these pr  
soners  
an effect  
in secur  
who dur  
querors,  
arms, th  
are held  
motion.  
death son  
shrink fr  
like a w  
before m  
Wh  
rival by



cover those of their opponents. For the former purpose they use all precautions; they follow each other in a single line, each treading in the footsteps of those before him; while the last carefully conceals their track by throwing leaves upon it. If they discover a rivulet on their way, they march in it, the more effectually to deceive their enemies. Their precautions increase as they approach their adversaries; they march only during the night, and during the day form a continual ambuscade. If they succeed in discovering their enemies without themselves being discovered, they immediately hold a council, in which they only whisper, and thus plan the dreadful scene which is to be acted. Immediately before day break, at the time when their adversaries are supposed to be immersed in the soundest sleep, they approach them on their hands and knees, till within bow shot. The chief gives a signal; they start up, and with a horrid yell discharge their arrows. Taking advantage of the confusion, they rush forward, and, with their tomahawks complete the carnage. Without some evident advantage of this kind, an Indian seldom engages; for he expects no praise for a victory which is purchased with the lives of any of his party.

Having secured the victory, and despatched all who would be troublesome to them on their return, they make the rest prisoners. They then scalp the dead and wounded; twisting the hair round their left hand and setting their foot on the person's neck, with a few strokes of the scalping knife, they dexterously separate the scalp from the head, preserve it as a monument of their victory. They never dispute about the division of their prisoners. He who is apprehensive of being wronged, with his tomahawk soon despatches the unhappy cause of their contest. They now turn their faces towards their own country, and if apprehensive of being pursued they use the same precautions with which they advanced. If all these precautions do not conceal them, they slay all their prisoners and each taking a separate road homewards, they put an effectual stop to the searches of an enemy. If they proceed in security, they are very careful to watch their prisoners; who during the day are constantly held by some of their conquerors, and during the night are fastened to the ground by the arms, the legs, and the necks, and cords from all these places are held by an Indian, who is instantly awaked by the smallest motion. The prisoners often during the night time sing their death song. "I am going to die," they exclaim, "but will not shrink from the tortures inflicted by my enemies. I will die like a warrior, and go to join those chiefs who have suffered before me."

When they approach their tents, they announce their arrival by different cries. The number of war whoops indicates

how many prisoners they have taken. The number of death cries, indicates how many of their companions they have lost. The whole village meets them to learn the particulars. They form a line through which the prisoners are obliged to pass; and they beat them with sticks from one end to the other. By a council which is immediately held, their fate is soon determined. Those who are condemned to die are delivered to the war chief; those who are spared are to be given to the chief of the nation. A prisoner is no sooner condemned than he is led to execution. He is bound to the stake, while, for the last time, he sings his death song. He is then burned and expires with that ferocious courage which distinguishes an Indian warrior. If he be a chief who has given proofs of his prowess in former engagements with his enemies, they frequently give his fortitude a severe trial, by the infliction of the most dreadful torments. Terror finds no place on the one hand, nor pity on the other. The victim glories in his torments as unequivocal marks of the opinion entertained of him by his tormentors. He boasts of the victories he has obtained over their nation; he enumerates the scalps which he possesses; he recapitulates the manner in which he has treated his prisoners, and reproaches them with ignorance in the act of torture. This scene, it is said, sometimes continues with little intermission for several days, till the prisoner is exhausted, but not humbled, expires without a sigh, or till his taunts provoke his tormentors to frustrate their own designs by putting a speedy end to his existence. The tortures made use of on these occasions are of various kinds, but all of them are such only as a savage heart could conceive, or a savage hand could inflict, and that only when prompted by that deadly animosity which cannot exist, but among barbarous tribes.

It is not to be imagined that these tortures are often inflicted. None ever suffer them but a chief, who has distinguished himself in war. Burning is the general way of putting prisoners to death, and but few of them suffer even in that manner. A great part are delivered to the chief of the nation, and distributed to those who have lost their husbands, sons or other relations in the war. They are by them generally adopted into their respective families; and if they conduct themselves properly and seem contented with their condition, they experience that tenderness and regard which belong to those whose places they fill. They have no chance of returning to their own tribe, for the Indians esteem all who permit themselves to be made prisoners as being unworthy of life, and would not receive them, could they make their escape. The prisoners who are not adopted into some family, are made slaves, and are often disposed of to Europeans for spirituous liquors; a custom

introd  
ventin

T  
exting  
not ea  
dian is  
peace  
terest  
is a frie  
of the  
mediat  
Before  
rights  
is about  
wood, a  
From t  
judge t  
ment of  
with to  
then fo  
thereby  
and air,  
heredita  
towards  
their tur  
presumi  
diately  
a symbo  
made of  
made us  
shells, re

Wi  
raphy, th  
concord

"A  
first go a  
line; the  
hand, he  
him by a  
tom of th  
remain o  
especiall  
advices t  
This exh  
singing.  
not to for

introduced by the French missionaries for the purpose of preventing the torturing of prisoners of war.

The animosity of savages is hereditary, and can seldom be extinguished; when peace becomes necessary, therefore, it is not easy to bring about the preliminaries. Even when an Indian is brought to the last extremity, he will seldom confess that peace is necessary for him; he tries to shew that it is the interest of his adversary; and generally employs a mediator who is a friend to both parties. A few of the most respectable heads of the tribe, attended by those chiefs who have undertaken to be mediators, proceed to that nation with which they are to treat. Before them is carried the pipe of peace, a sacred symbol, the rights of which no Indian will presume to violate. This pipe is about four feet long; its bowl is of red marble; its stem of wood, adorned with feathers, and painted with hieroglyphics. From the variety of these ornaments an Indian can immediately judge to what nation it belongs. Having reached the encampment of the hostile nation, an inferior chief fills the pipe of peace with tobacco; and having lighted it, presents it, first to heaven, then to earth, and, lastly, in a circle to all parts of the horizon; thereby invoking all the spirits that dwell in heaven, in earth and air, to be present at the treaty. He next presents it to the hereditary chief, who takes a few quiffs, blowing the smoke, first towards heaven, and then around him towards the earth. In their turns it is presented to all the chiefs in gradations, none presuming to touch it but with their lips. A council is immediately held, and if the parties agree, a red hatchet is buried as a symbol of the promised oblivion of their animosity. A belt made of a kind of shells, commonly called a belt of wampum, is made use of on this occasion; and, by the arrangement of the shells, records to posterity every stipulation of the treaty.

With this account, which is given us in the Glasgow Geography, the following observations by the Bishop of Meux, are concordant:

“As soon as all the warriors are embarked; the canoes at first go a little way and range themselves close together upon a line; then the chief rises up, and holding a *Chichicou* in his hand, he thunders out his song of war, and his soldiers answer him by a treble *He*, drawn with all their strength from the bottom of their breasts. The elders and chiefs of the council who remain on the shore, exhort the warriors to behave well, and especially not to suffer themselves to be surprised. Of all the advices that can be given to a savage, this is the most necessary. This exhortation does not interrupt the chief who continues singing. Lastly the warriors conjure their relations and friends not to forget them. Then sending forth all together hideous

howlings, they set off directly, and row with such speed that they are soon out of sight.

“The Hurons and the Ironquois do not use the Chichicoc, but they give them to their prisoners; so that these instruments, which among others is an instrument of war, seem among them to be a mark of slavery. The warriors seldom make any short marches, especially when the troop is numerous; but on the other hand, they take presages from every thing; and the jugglers, whose business it is to explain them, hasten or retard their march to their pleasure. Whilst they are not in a suspected country, they take no precaution, and frequently one shall scarce find two or three warriors together, each taking his own way to hunt; but how far soever they stray from the route, they all return punctually to the place, and at the hour appointed for their rendezvous. They encamp a long time before sunset, and commonly they leave before the camp a large space surrounded with palisades, or rather a sort of lattice, on which they place their *Manitous*, turned towards the place they are going to. They invoke them for an hour, and they do the same every morning before they decamp. After this they think they have nothing to fear, they suppose that the spirits take upon them to be sentinels, and all the army sleeps quietly under their supposed safeguard. Experience does not undeceive these barbarians, nor bring them out of their presumptuous confidence. It has its source in an indolence and laziness which nothing can conquer. Every one is an enemy in the way of the warriors, but nevertheless, if they meet any of their allies, or any parties nearly equal in force of people, with whom they have no quarrel, they make friendship with each other. If the allies they meet are at war with the same enemy, the chief of the strongest party, or of that which took up arms first, gives some scalps to the other, which they are always provided with for these occasions, and says to him, “*You have done your business;*” that is to say, “you have fulfilled your engagement, your honor is safe, you may return home.” But this is to be understood when the meeting is accidental, when they have not appointed them, and when they have no occasion for a reinforcement. When they are just entering on an enemy’s country, they stop for a ceremony which is something singular.

“At night they make a great feast, after which they lie down; as soon as they are awake, those who have had any dreams go from fire to fire, singing their song of death, with which they intermix their dreams in an enigmatical manner. Every one racks his brains to guess them, and if no body can do it, those who have dreamt are at liberty to return home. This gives a fine opportunity to cowards. Then they make new innovations to the *Spirits*; they animate each other more

than  
then  
ter, th  
every  
it wo  
into a  
no mo  
but by  
savag  
They  
range  
countr  
they l

“  
out a  
a coun  
suppos  
night t  
are ma  
till the  
signal  
howlin  
of their  
about,  
these p  
wooden  
which,  
is over  
they ne  
more r

“  
trench  
the res  
blood s

“

barbar  
vanquis  
the han  
as pass  
besmea  
fight; a  
hell.  
dispatch  
and see  
soners.

“  
their br

speed that

Chichicoo, instruments, among them any short but on the and the jug- retard their a suspected y one shall ing his own route, they appointed for sunset, and surrounded they place e going to. ame every k they have on them to r their sup- these barba- fidence. It nothing can e warriors, any parties ve no quar- allies they ne strongest ne scalps to these occa- ss;" that is r honor is understood t appointed rforcement. y, they stop ch they lie ve had any death, with al manner. o body can urn home. they make other more

than ever to do wonders; they swear to assist each other, and then they renew their march; and if they come thither by water, they quit their canoes, which they hide very carefully. If every thing was observed that is prescribed on these occasions, it would be difficult to surprise a party of war that is entered into an enemy's country. They ought to make no more fires, no more cries, nor hunt no more, nor even speak to each other but by signs. But these laws are sometimes violated. Every savage is born presumptuous, and incapable of the least restraint. They seldom neglect, however, to send out every evening some rangers, who consume two or three hours in looking round the country; if they have seen nothing they go to sleep quietly, and they leave the guard of the camp again to the *Manitous*.

"As soon as they have discovered an enemy, they send out a party to reconnoitre them, and on their report they hold a council. The attack is generally made at day-break. They suppose the enemy is at this time in their deepest sleep, and all night they lie on their bellies, without stirring. The approaches are made in the same posture, crawling on their feet and hands, till they come to the place; then all rise up, the chief gives the signal by a loud cry, to which all the troops answer by real howlings, and they make at the same time their first discharge of their arrows; then, without giving the enemy any time to look about, they fall upon them with their clubs. In latter times these people have substituted little hatchets instead of these *wooden head-breakers*, which they call by the same name; since which, their engagements are more bloody. When the battle is over, they take the scalps of the dead and the dying; and they never think of making prisoners till the enemy makes no more resistance.

"If they find the enemy on their guard, or too well intrenched, they retire, if they have time for it; if not, they take the resolution to fight stoutly, and there is sometimes much blood shed on both sides.

"The attack of a camp is the image of fury itself; the barbarous fierceness of the conquerors, and the despair of the vanquished, who know what they must expect if they fall into the hands of their enemies, produce on either side such efforts as pass all description. The appearance of the combatants all besmeared with black and red, still increases the horror of the fight; and from this pattern one might make a true picture of hell. When the victory is no longer doubtful, they directly dispatch all those whom it would be troublesome to carry away, and seek only to tire out the rest they intended to make prisoners.

"The savages are naturally intrepid, and notwithstanding their brutal fierceness, they yet preserve in the midst of action

much coolness. Nevertheless they never fight in the field, only when they cannot avoid it, their reason is, that a victory marked with the blood of the conquerors, is not properly a victory, and the glory of a chief consists in bringing back all his subjects safe and sound. I have been told that when two enemies who, are acquainted, meet in the fight, there sometimes passes between them dialogues much like that of *Homer's* heroes. I do not think this happens in the height of engagement; but it may happen that in little rencountres, or perhaps before passing a brook, or forcing an entrenchment, they say something by way of defiance, or to call to mind some such rencountre.

“War is commonly made by a surprise, and it generally succeeds, for as the savages very frequently neglect the precautions necessary to shun a surprise, so are they active and skilful in surprising. On the other hand these people have a wonderful talent, I may say, an instinct, to know if any person has passed any place. On the shortest grass, or the hardest ground, even upon stones, they discover some traces, and by the way they are turned; by the shape of their feet; by the manner they are separated from each other, they distinguish, as they say, the footsteps of different nations, and those of men from those of women. I thought a long time there was an exaggeration in this matter, but the reports of those who have lived long among the savages, are so unanimous herein that I see no room to doubt of their sincerity. Till the conquerors are in a country of safety, they march forward expeditiously, and lest the wounded should retard them, they carry them by turns on litters, or draw them on sledges in winter. When they re-enter their canoes they make their prisoners sing, and they practise the same thing when they meet any allies; an honour which costs them a feast who receive it, and the unfortunate captives something more than the trouble of singing; for they invite the allies to caress them, and to caress the prisoners is to do them all the mischief they can devise, or to maim them in such a manner that they are lamed for ever; but there are some chiefs who take some care of these wretches, and do not suffer them to be too much abused. But nothing is equal to the care they take to keep them; by day they are tied by the neck and by the arms to one of the bars of the canoes. When they go by land there is always one that holds them; and at night they are stretched upon the earth quite naked; some cords fastened to piquets, fixed in the ground, keep their legs, arms, and necks so confined that they cannot stir, and some long cords confine also their hands and feet, in such a manner that they cannot make the least motion without waking the savages who lie on these cords.

“If among the prisoners there are any, who by their wounds

are no  
rectly  
in hast  
than th  
“

chief o  
club, o  
that of  
with al  
marks  
coal po  
some h  
pass by  
of the r  
They k  
tioned;  
soldiers  
*Marmo*  
dead by  
tinguish  
marks a  
happene  
their ro

“V  
the villa  
one to g  
soon as  
which g  
cess of t  
lost by s  
come ou  
comes o  
from hin  
senger r  
who acc  
or disma  
The mes  
put to hi  
crier inv  
and the  
they only  
messenger  
him; but  
sembled,  
tires to hi  
they do r

“W



are not in a condition to be carried away, they burn them directly; and as this is done in the first heat, and when they are in haste to retreat, they are, for the most part, more fortunate than the others who are reserved for a slower punishment.

“ In order to leave on the field a mark of their victory, the chief of the victorious party sticks in the ground his fighting club, on which he had taken care to trace the mark of his nation, that of his family, and his own picture; that is to say, an *Oval*, with all the figures he had in his face. Others painted all these marks on the trunk of a tree, or on a piece of bark, with charcoal pounded and rubbed, mixed with some colours. They add some hieroglyphic characters, by means of which, those who pass by may know even the minutest circumstances, not only of the action, but also of the whole transactions of the campaign. They know the chief of the party by all the marks I have mentioned; the number of his exploits by so many mats; that of his soldiers by lines; that of the prisoners carried away by little *Marmosets* placed on a stick or on a *Chichicoue*; that of the dead by human figures without heads, with differences to distinguish the men, the women, and the children. But these marks are not always set up near the place where the action happened, for when a party is pursued, they place them out of their route, in order to deceive their pursuers.

“ When the warriors are arrived at a certain distance from the village whence they came, they halt, and the chief sends one to give notice of their approach. Among some nations, as soon as the messenger is within hearing, he makes various cries which give a general idea of the principal adventures and success of the campaign; he marks the number of men they have lost by so many cries of death. Immediately the young people come out to hear the particulars; sometimes the whole village comes out, but one alone addresses the messenger, and learns from him the details of the news which he brings. As the messenger relates a fact, he repeats it aloud, turning towards those who accompanied him, and they answer him by acclamations, or dismal cries, according as the news are mournful or pleasing. The messenger is then conducted to a cabin, where the elders put to him the same questions as before; after which, a public crier invites all the young people to go to meet the warriors, and the women to carry them refreshments. In some places they only think of mourning for those they have lost; then the messenger makes only cries of death. They do not go to meet him; but at his entering the village, he finds all the people assembled, he relates in a few words all that has passed, then retires to his cabin, where they carry him food; and for some time they do nothing but mourn for the dead.

“ When this time is expired, they make another cry to pro-

claim the victory. Then every one dries up his tears, and they think of nothing but rejoicing. Something like this is practiced at the return of the hunters: the women who remained in the village go to meet them as soon as they are informed of their approach, and before they inquire of the success of their hunting, they inform them by their tears of the deaths that have happened since their departure. To return to the warriors, the moment when the women join them, is, properly speaking, the beginning of the punishment of the prisoners; and when some of them are intended to be adopted, which is not allowed to be done by all nations, their future parents, whom they take care to inform of it, and go and receive them at a little distance, and conduct them to their cabins by some round-about ways. In general, the captives are a long time ignorant of their fate, and there are few who escape the first fury of the women.

“All the prisoners who are destined to die, and those whose fate is not yet decided, are, as I have already said, abandoned to the fury of the women, who go to meet the warriors; and it is surprising that they resist all the evils they make them suffer. If any one, especially, has lost either her son or husband, or any other person that was dear to her, though this loss had happened thirty years before, she is a *fury*. She attacks the first who falls under her hand; and one can scarcely imagine how far she is transported with rage; she has no regard either to humanity or decency, and on every wound she gives him, one would expect to see him fall dead at her feet, if we did not know how ingenious these barbarians are in prolonging the most unheard of punishments. All the night passes in this manner in the camp of the warriors.

“The next day is the day of the triumph of the warriors. The Iroquois and some others affect a great modesty, and a still greater disinterestedness on these occasions. The chiefs enter alone into the village, without any mark of victory, keeping a profound silence, and retire to their cabins, without showing that they have the least pretensions to the prisoners. Among other nations the same custom is not observed: the chief marches at the head of his troops with the air of a conqueror; his lieutenant comes after him, and a crier goes before, who is ordered to renew the death cries. The warriors follow by two and two, the prisoners in the midst, crowned with flowers, their faces and hair painted, holding a stick in one hand and a *Chichicoué* in the other, their bodies almost naked, their arms tied above the elbows with a cord, the end of which is held by the warriors, and they sing without ceasing their death song to the sound of the *Chichicoué*.

“This song has something mournful and haughty at the same time; and the captive has nothing of the air of a man who

suffer  
of the  
nor a  
are le  
enemi  
devou  
to tin  
dance  
finest  
or bur  
the pe  
seek t  
their f  
quite f  
most c  
in bein

“  
ranks  
them a  
yet it r  
take, e  
which  
endang  
them.  
they w  
As soon  
cabia  
welcom  
other p  
a bad k  
flesh to  
he can;  
that sh  
their ha  
no one  
they se  
berty to  
veral vi  
allies w  
same m

“A  
captives  
delivere  
sulted o  
open pl  
or distu  
husband

suffers, and that is vanquished. This is pretty near the sense of these songs:—“*I am brave and intrepid; I do not fear death nor any kind of tortures; those who fear them are cowards; they are less than women; life is nothing without courage; may my enemies be confounded with despair and rage; Oh! that I could devour them and drink their blood to the last drop.*” From time to time they stop them; the people gather round them and dance; they seem to do it with a good will; they relate the finest actions of their lives; they name all those they have killed or burnt; and they make particular mention of those for whom the people present are concerned; one would say that they only seek to animate more and more against them the masters of their fate. In fact, these boastings make those who hear them quite furious, and they pay dear for their vanity: but by the most cruel treatment, one would say, that they take a pleasure in being tormented.

“Sometimes they oblige the prisoners to run through two ranks of savages, armed with stones and sticks, who fall upon them as if they would knock them in the head at the first blow; yet it never happens that they kill them; so much care do they take, even when they seem to strike at random, that their hand which is guided by fury alone, does not touch any part that would endanger life. In this march every one has a right to torment them. They are indeed allowed to defend themselves; but they would, if they were to attempt it, soon be overpowered. As soon as they are arrived at the village, they lead them from cabin to cabin, and every where they make them pay their welcome. In one place they pull off one of their nails, in another place they bite off one of their fingers, or cut it off with a bad knife which cuts like a saw. An old man tears their flesh to the very bone; a child with an awl wounds them where he can; a woman whips them without mercy, till she is so tired that she cannot lift her hand; but none of the warriors lay their hands on them, although they are still their masters; and no one can mutilate the prisoners without their leave, which they seldom want; but this excepted, they have an entire liberty to make them suffer; and if they lead them through several villages, either of the same nation, or their neighbours or allies who have desired, they are received every where in the same manner.

“After these preludes they set about the distribution of the captives, and their fate depends on those to whom they are delivered. At the rising of the council where they have consulted of their fate, a crier invites all the people to come to an open place, where the distribution is made without any noise or disturbance. The women who have lost their children or husbands in the war, generally receive the first lot. In the

next place they fulfil the promises made to those who have given the *collars*. If there are not captives enough for this purpose, they supply the want of them by scalps; with which those who receive them adorn themselves on rejoicing days; and at other times they hang them up at the doors of their cabins. On the contrary, if the number of prisoners exceeds that of the claimants, they send the overplus to the village of their allies. A chief is not replaced but by a chief, or by two or three ordinary persons who are always burnt, although those whom they replace had died of diseases.

“The Iroquois never fail to set apart some of their prisoners for the public, and these the council dispose of as they think proper. But the mothers of families may set aside their sentence, and are the mistresses of the life and death even of those who have been condemned or absolved by the council.

“In some nations the warriors do not entirely deprive themselves of the right of disposing of their captives, and they to whom the council give them are obliged to put them again into their hands if they require it; but they do it very seldom; and when they do it they are obliged to return the pledges or presents received from those persons. If on their arrival they have declared their intentions on this subject, it is seldom opposed. In general the greatest number of the prisoners of war are condemned to death, or to very hard slavery, in which their lives are never secure; some are adopted; and from that time their condition differs in nothing from that of the children of the nation. They enter into all the rights of those places which they supply; and they often acquire so far the spirit of the nation of which they are become members, that they make no difficulty of going to war against their own countrymen. The Iroquois would have scarcely supported themselves hitherto but by this policy. Having been at war many years against all the other nations, they would at present have been reduced almost to nothing, if they had not taken great care to naturalize a good part of their prisoners of war.

“It sometimes happens that instead of sending into the other villages the surplus of their captives, they give them to private persons, who had not asked for any; and, in this case, either they are not so far masters of them, as not to be obliged to consult the chiefs of the council how they shall dispose of them, or else they are obliged to adopt them. In the first place he to whom they make a present of a slave, sends for him by one of his family; then he fastens him to the door of his cabin, and assembles the chiefs of the council, to whom he declares his intentions and asks their advice. This advice is generally agreeable to his desire. In the second place the council, in giving the prisoner to the person they have determined on, say to

him, ‘  
your r  
Or els  
who, b  
appear  
to def  
in the

“  
all app  
a pres  
liberty  
expres  
hands  
the he  
dren.

of this  
mat, i  
you p  
“

where  
then t  
wound  
of wo  
forget  
cently  
dren,  
expres  
they s  
places  
but he

“  
intend  
till the  
It app  
sacrifi  
only o  
they b  
in the  
them;  
accor  
their  
to ser  
when  
to pre  
cealec

“  
ment

him, 'It is a long time we have been deprived of such an one, your relation, or your friend, who was a support of our village.' Or else, 'we regret the spirit of such an one you have lost; and who, by his wisdom, maintained the public tranquillity; he must appear again this day; he was too dear to us, and too precious to defer his revival any longer; we place him again on his mat, in the person of this prisoner.'

"There are, nevertheless, some private persons that are in all appearance more considered than others, to whom they make a present of a captive without any conditions, and with full liberty to do what they please with him; and then the council express themselves in these terms, when they put him in their hands:—'This is to repair the loss of such a one, and to cleanse the heart of his father, of his mother, of his wife, and of his children. If you are either willing to make them drink the broth of this flesh, or that you had rather replace the deceased on his mat, in the person of this captive, you may dispose of him as you please.'

"When a prisoner is adopted, they lead him to the cabin where he must live, and the first thing they do is to untie him; then they warm some water and wash him; they dress his wounds, if he has any, and if they were even putrified, and full of worms, he is soon cured; they omit nothing to make him forget his sufferings; they make him eat, and clothe him decently. In a word, they would not do more for their own children, nor for him whom *he raises from the dead*; this is their expression. Some days after, they make a feast; during which they solemnly give him the name of the person whom he replaces, and whose rights he not only acquires from that time, but he lays himself also under the same obligations.

"Amongst the Hurons and Iroquois, the prisoners they intend to burn, are sometimes as well treated at first, and even till the moment of execution, as those that have been adopted. It appears as if they were victims they had fattened for the sacrifice, and they are really a sacrifice to the *god of war*. The only difference they make between these and the others, is, that they blacken their faces all over; after this, they entertain them in the best manner they are able; they always speak kindly to them; they give them the names of sons, brothers, or nephews, according to the person whose names they are to appease by their death. They also sometimes give them young women, to serve them for wives all the time they have to live. But when they are informed of their fate, they must be well kept, to prevent their escaping. Therefore this often times is concealed from them.

"When they have been delivered up to a woman, the moment they inform her, every thing is ready for execution, she

is no longer a mother, she is a *fury*, who passes from the tenderest caresses to the greatest excess of rage; she begins by invoking the spirit of him she desires to revenge. 'Approach,' says she, 'you are going to be appeased; I prepare a feast for thee; drink great draughts of this broth which is going to be poured out to thee; receive the sacrifice I am going to make to thee in sacrificing this warrior; he shall be burnt and put in the kettle; they shall apply red hot hatchets to his flesh; they shall pull off his scalp; they shall drink in his skull; make therefore no more complaints, thou shalt be fully satisfied.'

"This form of speech which is properly the sentence of death, varies much as to the terms; but for the meaning, it is always the same. Then a crier makes the captive come out of the cabin, and declares in a loud voice the intention of him or her to whom he belongs, and finishes by exhorting the young people to behave well. Another succeeds, who addresses him that is to suffer, and says, '*brother take courage thou art going to be burnt.*' And he answers coolly, '*that is well, I give thee thanks.*' Immediately there is a cry through the whole village, and the prisoner is led to the place of his punishment. For the most part they tie him to a post by the hands and feet; but in such a manner that he can turn round it. But sometimes when the execution takes place in a cabin whence there is no danger of escaping, they let him run from one end to the other. Before they begin to burn him, he sings for the last time his death song. Then he recites his achievements, and almost always in a manner the most insulting to those he perceives around him. Then he exhorts them not to spare him, but to remember that he is a man and a warrior. During these tragical and barbarous scenes the sufferer sings aloud and with such seeming carelessness, that hereby he offers the greatest insult to his executioners. In short, the thought that there are no hopes of mercy, gives resolution and inspires boldness.

"As to the causes that should produce in the savages such inhumanity, which we could never have believed men to have been guilty of, I believe they acquire it by degrees, and have been used to it insensibly by custom; but a desire of seeing their enemy behave manly, the insults which the sufferers do not cease to make to their tormentors, the desire of revenge, which is the reigning passion of this people, and which they do not think sufficiently glutted, whilst the courage of those who are the object of it, is not subdued, and lastly superstition, have a great share in it, for what excesses are not produced by a false zeal, guided by so many passions."

WAR

W  
Aberne  
very sa  
kettle on  
the bark  
who ha  
howeve  
or trave  
tomary,  
inhabiti  
it is ack  
eminent  
blood or  
rical wa  
among t  
pression  
David d  
of their  
wicked,  
In after  
tuted th  
which th  
made us  
in their  
common  
better p  
not be r

"T  
barous t  
trifling,  
these ci  
dom at p  
expediti  
of their  
the Yak  
dispensa  
Some tr  
black th  
change

"  
other w  
any per  
selves v  
death o



WAR AMONG THE TONGUSI, CORIAKS, KAMSCHADALES, YAKUTSI, OKOTSI, OF SIBERIA.

When war is declared among the Tongusi, according to Abernethy, Santini, and others, the first ceremony, which is the very same among the North American Indians, is to *hang the kettle on the fire*. This preliminary, no doubt, originated from the barbarous custom of eating the prisoners of war, and those who had been killed, after they had been boiled. We find, however, no authentic proof adduced by any European writer or traveller, which will induce us to believe that it was customary, either among the North American Indians or the tribes inhabiting the north east part of Asia, to eat human flesh; still it is acknowledged by themselves on both continents. Some eminent travellers have asserted that the terms *to drink the blood or broth of the flesh of their enemies*, were only an allegorical way of speaking among the Asiatics, and consequently among the Indians of North America. These figurative expressions are often found in the scripture. The enemies of *David* did not, as it appears, make it a custom to eat the flesh of their enemies, when he said, Psalm xxvii. 5. ii., '*When the wicked, even mine enemies, came upon me to eat up my flesh.*' In after times, however, we are convinced that nations substituted the fact in room of the figure. Although the expressions which the Asiatics of Siberia and the North American Indians made use of, when they addressed their prisoners of war, would in their literal sense induce us to believe that cannibalism was common among them on certain occasions, yet, as we have no better proof than their own allegorical expressions, we must not be rash enough to accuse them of such inhumanity.

"The motives," says Abernethy, "which engage the barbarous tribes of north east Asia to make war, are generally trifling, and often founded on some old or new injury. Under these circumstances, nations which were once enemies, are seldom at peace with each other. Before they set out on any warlike expedition, they must first obtain the approbation and sanction of their elders and chiefs, who constitute the council. Among the *Yakutsi* and *Okotsi*, fasting for several days is deemed indispensably necessary, especially for their chiefs or leaders. Some tribes among the Tongusi and Coriaks paint themselves black the day before they depart; this colour, however, is changed into red on setting off.

"The chief among the Kamschadales fasts longer than the other warriors, and during that time he scarcely converses with any person, and is besmeared with black. This painting themselves with black arises, I suppose, from some notions of the *death* or slaughter which they are about to inflict on their ene-

mies. Dreams are also carefully observed, and more favourably interpreted, for they are generally auspicious omens. After they have performed many ridiculous ceremonies, the chief assembles his warriors, and tells them that the *Great Spirit* and the spirits of their murdered brethren demand revenge. Having delivered an enthusiastic and figurative speech of no great length, in which he reminds them of the bravery and heroism of their fathers and of the injuries done them and their brethren, they heat water with which they wash the black colour from his face. They set his hair in order, grease it, and repaint it with red and various other colours. After he is dressed in his finest robes he begins to sing the *song of death* in a low tone. His warriors then who are to accompany him, sing one after another their *war song*; for every man has his own, which is not to be sung by another. Some families have also songs peculiar to themselves. They now proceed to hear the final decision of the council, who are for two or three days secluded from society. 'Go,' says the elders, 'and wipe away the blood of your brethren; their bodies are not covered; destroy your enemies and eat all your captives.' This sentence is received with acclamations, howlings and yells, and they depart to make a feast, which is called the feast of the dog; for the dogs are generally the only dish. Before the dog is put into the kettle, they offer him to the *god of war*. Sometimes they declare war openly by sending a painted tomahawk to their enemies; and at other times they take them by surprise without giving the least notice of their hostile intentions. Among the Coriaks a second feast is given by the chief before their departure, to which he invites all the village. Before they partake of any thing, the chief stands up and delivers a longer speech than usual. 'We have been slain,' says he, 'the bones of our brethren remain uncovered, their spirits cry against us, and we must satisfy them. The Great Spirit tells us to take revenge. Take therefore courage and dress your hair; paint your faces and fill your quivers.'

"After this discourse he is applauded with deafening yells. He then advances into the midst of the assembly to sing with his war club in his hand. The warriors swear or promise to follow him and support him till they die. They put themselves in the position of fighting, and their gestures would almost make one believe that they are actually fighting among themselves. This they do that their chiefs and family may understand their intrepidity and firm resolutions of not flying from the enemy. Songs and dances follow these assurances, and the feast puts an end to these ceremonies.

"The Tongusi, in order to ascertain the courage, patience and perseverance of their warriors, inflict many injuries and

insults  
first re  
with th  
they sh  
bility,  
name  
young

void of  
any civ  
tual ple  
their de  
which i  
cabin, h  
the sam  
sings th  
families.

"T  
breaker.  
loes and  
well wr  
and mus  
which pr

"T  
with ther  
every on  
ous colou  
they plac  
valuable  
sits with  
him.

"W  
con- ruct  
During th  
the Roma  
or three  
their prin  
to be their  
are not in  
small part  
evening a  
they proce  
the trouble

"It is  
enemies, b  
asleep. T  
discharging

insults on the young people who never faced an enemy. They first reproach them with the names of cowards; they beat them with their clubs and even throw boiling water on them; and if they show on these occasions the least impatience and sensibility, they are reckoned as dastards who are not worthy of the name of warriors. They carry this practice of trying the young men so far that it would be too tedious to relate them.

“When the day of departure is arrived, they are not at all void of those tender feelings, which are always found among any civilized nation on occasions of this sort. They give mutual pledges as assurances of a perpetual remembrance. At their departure the whole village meets at the cabin of the chief which is now surrounded by warriors. On coming out of his cabin, he addresses them for the last time. His speech is much the same as I have already said. After his speech he again sings the song of death, and they all take their leave of their families, friends and relations.

“Their arms are bows and arrows, a javelin and a *head-breaker*. Their defensive armour consists of the hides of buffaloes and sometimes a coat of pliable sticks, woven and pretty well wrought. They have now however substituted swords and muskets for their offensive weapons and defensive armour, which prove more fatal and destructive.

“The Coriaks have their tutelary deities which they carry with them on these expeditions. These symbols under which every one represents his familiar spirit, are painted with various colours and carried in sacks. When they travel by water they place the sacks which contain them, their presents, and other valuable articles in the fore part of their canoes where the chief sits with no other intention, I suppose, than that of honouring him.

“When they encamp, which is always about sunset, they construct tents of mats which they carry along with them. During the night they divide their watches after the manner of the Romans. Sometimes, however, they all sleep, except two or three on whom they have the greatest dependence. But their principal safeguards are their deities whom they imagine to be their surest protectors. On the following morning, if they are not in any hurry to arrive in the country of their enemies, small parties separate into different directions to hunt, and in the evening all return to their camp about the same time. Thus they procure their subsistence as they go along without being at the trouble of carrying burdens of provisions.

“It is generally about day break that they attack their enemies, because about this time they imagine that they are asleep. The chief gives the signal, and they all rush forward, discharging their arrows, and preparing their more deadly wea-

poons, their *tomahawks*. Slaughter and destruction are now committed without mercy or compassion, and the vanquished frequently undergo the painful operation of *scalping*.

"In retreating, they use the greatest precaution, by marching forward expeditiously and pursuing a different route from what their enemies would suppose. They also conceal the marks of their steps by covering them with the leaves of the trees. Those who have been taken prisoners are doomed to the most cruel treatment, much worse than the torments which the Christians endured from the Pagans.

"The Yakutsi conduct their prisoners to their villages where they are immediately slaughtered, except those who are ransomed by their respective chiefs. Many of them are also given to those widows who have lost their husbands in war. The Okotsi are again more merciful, for they seldom put to death any of their captives, unless they attempt to escape. The same treatment towards prisoners of war has been often observed among the various tribes of north east Asia.

"Innumerable ceremonies attend the entrance of the warriors into their villages, on their return from the field of battle. The Tongusi enter in great triumph. They send two messengers before to announce their approach, and relate their success, if they come off conquerors. All their friends of both sexes are summoned to meet them, at some distance from the village, with provisions and other refreshments. Here they make a feast, during which every one recounts his own exploits and heroic actions. After they amuse themselves with dancing and singing, they return home, where they are entertained with more sumptuous festivities, which last for several days. The prisoners are contented with singing mournful airs, in which they implore the compassion of their conquerors. When captives are adopted among them, they fail not to show them that they are no less humane than they are ferocious when they inflict punishment."

Santini has observed almost the same as Abernethy; but he has noticed more particularly the *Potoosi* of the Coriaks, which is held so sacred among the North American Indians, under the name of *Calumet*. Thus speaks Santini:—"Quando *si vuol dischiare la pace, si accende la Sacra Pipa di tabacco. Allora uno dei principi l'offerisce al commandante degli inimici, la quale se riceve, la guerra e finita. Si dice che da tutta questa gente, il contratto della Pipa e stimato inviolabile. Il concavo e fatto d'argilla e il tubo d'una canna. Il tubo e ornato di piume di varii colori: Ma hanno differenti pipe per differenti contratti.*"

When a nation is inclined to make peace, according to Santini, they light the *sacred pipe*, and it is offered by a chief to

the chief  
smokes  
they co  
never v  
reed th  
various  
ferent s

THE

W

is, to co  
mon en  
set on o  
of the t  
fect, dis  
stead of  
only a s  
and hol  
at his s  
give mu  
elks and  
made wi  
skins the  
pine's ha  
tracted b  
dancing,  
the *gran*  
times utt  
on obtain  
against th  
reconcilin  
and then  
in his tur  
of congra

"Th

a military  
say, that  
publishing  
author of  
who have  
*Caduceus*  
as a symb  
*chichicoue*

the chief commander of the hostile tribe; if he receives and smokes it, peace is immediately proclaimed; and so sacred do they consider this agreement, that they have been seldom or never violated. The bowl is made of clay, and the tube of a reed three or four feet long; it is decorated with feathers of various colours. They have their different pipes for their different sorts of contracts.

---

### THE DANCE OF THE CALUMET AMONG THE NORTH AMERICAN INDIANS.

When the dance of the *Calumet* is intended, as it generally is, to conclude a peace, or a treaty of alliance against a common enemy, they grave a serpent on the tube of the pipe, and set on one side of it a board, on which is represented two men of the two confederate nations, with the enemy under their feet, distinguished by the mark of his nation. Sometimes, instead of a *Calumet*, they set up a fighting club. But if it concerns only a single alliance, they represent two men joining one hand and holding in the other a *calumet* of peace, and having each at his side the mark of his nation. In all these treaties they give mutual pledges, neck-laces, calumets, slaves; sometimes elks and deer skins, well dressed and ornamented with figures made with porcupine's hair; and then they represent on these skins the things which have been mentioned, either with porcupine's hair, or plain colours. During this treaty, which is contracted by means of the *pipe*, the greater part of them join in dancing, which is called the *calumet* dance. The chief carries the *grand pipe* in his hand and leads the circular dance, sometimes uttering sentiments of joy, as if congratulating his tribe on obtaining confederates, and at other times howling revenge against the common enemy. The chief, who was the means of reconciling the two tribes to each other, first smokes the *pipe* and then offers it to the chief of his confederates, who also fumes in his turn. Then the whole assembly join in one common cry of congratulation.

"This ceremony," says the Bishop of Mieux, "is properly a military feast. The warriors are the actors, and one would say, that it was instituted only to give them an opportunity of publishing their great achievements in war. I am not the author of this opinion, which does not agree well with theirs, who have maintained that the calumet took its origin from *Caduceus of Mercury*, and that in its institution it was esteemed as a symbol of peace. All those I saw dance, sing, shake the *chichicoue*, and beat the drum, were young people equipped,

as when they prepare for the march;—they had painted their faces with all sorts of colours, their heads were adorned with feathers, and they held some in their hands like fans. The calumet was also adorned with feathers, and was set up in the most conspicuous place. The band of music, and the dancers were round about it, the spectators divided here and there in little companies, the women separated from the men, all seated on the ground, and dressed in their finest robes, which at some distance made a pretty shew.

“Between the music and the commandant, who sat before the door of his lodging, they had set up a post, on which, at the end of every dance, a warrior came and gave a stroke with his hatchet. At this signal there was a great silence, and this man repeated with a loud voice, some of his great feats, and then received the applauses of the spectators. Afterwards he went to his place and the sport began again. This lasted two hours for each of the nations; and I acknowledge that I took no great pleasure in it, not only on account of the same tone and the unpleasantness of the music, but because all the dances consisted in contortions, which seemed to me to express nothing, and were no way entertaining.

“*The dance of the discovery* is more entertaining, because it has more action, and expresses better than the foregoing the subject it represents. It is a natural representation of all that passes in an expedition of war; and as I have before observed, that the savages, for the greatest part only, endeavour to surprise the enemy. This is no doubt the reason why they have given this dance the name of the *discovery*.

“However that may be, only one single man performs this dance. At first he advances slowly into the midst of the place, where he remains for some time motionless, after which he represents one after another; the setting out of the warriors, the march, and the encamping; he goes on the discovery, he makes his approach, he stops as to take breath, then all on a sudden he grows furious, and one would imagine he was going to kill every body, then he appears more calm and takes one of the company as if he had him a prisoner of war; he makes a show of knocking another person's brains out; he levels his gun at another; and lastly, he sets up a running with all his might, and he stops instantaneously and recovers himself. This is to represent a retreat, at first precipitate and afterwards less so. Then he expresses by different cries the various affections of his mind, during his last campaign, and finishes by reciting all the brave actions he has performed in the war.

“In the western parts there is another dance used, which is called *the dance of the bull*. The dancers form several circles or rings, and the music, which is always the drum or the

*chichic*  
those o  
ries in  
not tur  
very hi

“I  
they al  
exploit  
where  
of his f  
exploit  
right to  
it to an  
see we  
shields,  
hides.

“  
for the  
There  
relation  
the sou  
the wo  
and the  
the circ  
time, it  
ges wa  
This m  
has see  
always

THE  
AM

A  
Tongu  
night p  
is give  
is intro  
and br  
conside  
from th  
tobacco  
warrior  
martial



*chichicoue*, is in the midst of the place. They never separate those of the family; they do not join hands, and every one carries in his hand, his arms and his buckler. All the circles do not turn in the same way; and though they caper much, and very high, they always keep time and measure.

“From time to time a chief of a family presents his shield; they all strike on it, and at every stroke he repeats some of his exploits. Then he goes and cuts a piece of tobacco at a post, where they have fastened a certain quantity, and gives it to one of his friends. If any one can prove that he has done greater exploits, or had a share in those the other boasts of, he has a right to take the piece of tobacco that was presented, and give it to another. This dance is followed by a feast; but I do not see well from whence it derives its name, unless it be from the shields, on which they strike, which are covered with bull’s hides.

“There are dances which are prescribed by the physicians for the cure of the sick, but they are generally very lascivious. There are some that are entirely for discussion, that have no relation to any thing. They are almost always in circles, to the sound of the drum and the *chichicoue*, the men apart from the women. The men dance with their arms in their hands, and though they never take hold of each other, they never break the circle. As to what I said before, that they are always in time, it is no difficult thing to believe, that the music of the savages was but two or three notes which are repeated continually. This makes their feasts very tiresome to a European after he has seen them once, because they last a long time, and you hear always the same thing.”

---

#### THE DANCE OF THE POTOOSI, OR CALUMET, AMONG THE TONGUSI, CORIAKS, KAMSCHADALE, YAKUTSI, AND OKOTSI.

Abernethy, in speaking of the Potoosi dance among the Tongusi, gives us the following description of it:—“On the night previous to their departure, a very singular entertainment is given by the chief, in which the *Potoosi*, or the *sacred pipe*, is introduced, for the purpose of binding the warriors to fidelity and bravery. The Potoosi, among all the Tongusian tribes, is considered a sacred instrument, which their fathers received from the *Great Spirit*, or *God of War*, to make vows by fuming tobacco. On the evening, therefore, before they depart, the warriors are summoned to appear before the chief, in their martial uniforms. The women also attend, and they are attired

in their richest robes. Having formed a circle, the musicians stand in the midst. Their music is very simple; for it consists only of two instruments, which produce neither harmony nor order. The dancers, however, keep time to the cadence of the music. This dance, as usual, was a ring or circle in which they moved roundwards incessantly, till it was announced to seat themselves on the ground to partake of the feast, the principal dish of which consists of the flesh of a *white dog*. Before the dog is put into the *kettle*, they perform several ceremonies in offering him while alive to the *Great Spirit*; for they imagine that no animal is more pleasing, in a sacrifice, than a white dog. All their feasts are supplied with the flesh of the dog, and they might as well be called *sacrifices* as *feasts*; because the offering of the dog to their Supreme Deity always precedes the feast. After the dogs are consumed, they rise and renew their dances. The first thing, however, after the feast, is the offering of the *Potoosi* to the *Great Spirit*, by the senior chief. The fumes of the pipe are directed upwards towards the *Great Spirit*. This ceremony resembles, in a great measure, the Asiatic offering of *incense*. When the chief imagines that the *Deity* is fully satisfied with this act of adoration, every warrior in his turn, takes the pipe, which is decorated with various ornaments, and, at every *quiff*, promises to adhere to his commander, and never fly from his enemy. At the same time he relates what he has done in favour of his nation; and he foretells his future achievements. The chief takes the *Potoosi* a second time, and at every quiff he enumerates the various engagements in which he conquered his enemies. The whole assembly then join in applauding his bravery and undaunted spirit. The feast of the *Potoosi* is concluded with the *song of death*, in which they swear vengeance against their enemies. Then they retire to their cabins or huts, to prepare for their departure on the following morning. They have several other dances on various occasions, and to describe them now is not necessary; because the same ceremonies are used almost on every occasion."

Santini, whom we have so often quoted, describes very minutely all their dances; but the observations of Abernethy, will, we hope, suffice to give the reader an idea of them all. Without alluding particularly to the Coriaks, Kamschadales, Yakutsi, and the Okotsi, we shall only say, that dances of a similar nature are common among them as well as the Tongusi.

#### SACRIFICES AMONG THE NORTH AMERICAN INDIANS.

The North American Indians make to all their spirits different sorts of offerings, which may be called sacrifices. They

throw  
cut, to  
honour  
they th  
which  
out of  
ledgem  
of the  
also on  
nied w  
could r  
have ne  
mitted  
as a se

W  
skins a  
of diffic  
falls; a  
preside  
commo  
him up  
raving  
very w  
same l  
benefic

"  
well a  
they r  
revere  
that if  
able t  
shun  
cics in  
perso  
lent s  
deity,

of Si  
religi  
or se  
to hu  
ferin

throw into the lakes, tobacco or birds that have had their throats cut, to render the gods of the waters propitious to them. In honour of the Sun, and sometimes also of the inferior spirits, they throw into the fire a part of every thing they use, and which they acknowledge to hold from them. It is sometimes out of gratitude, but oftener through interest; their acknowledgement is also interested; for these people have no sentiments of the heart towards their deities. There have been observed also on certain occasions some libations, and all this is accompanied with invocations in mysterious terms, which the savages could never explain to the Europeans, either that in fact they have no meaning, or that the sense of them has not been transmitted by tradition with the words; perhaps also they keep it as a secret from us.

We learn also that collars of porcelain, tobacco, ears of maize, skins and whole animals, especially dogs, were found on the sides of difficult and dangerous ways, on rocks, or by the side of the falls; and these were so many offerings made to the spirits which presided in these places. We have already said that a dog is the common victim which they offer them; sometimes they hang him up alive on a tree by the hind feet, and let him die there raving mad. The war feast, which is always of dogs, may very well pass for a sacrifice. In short, they render much the same honours to the mischievous spirits, as to those that are beneficent, when they have any thing to fear from their malice.

---

### SACRIFICES AMONG THE TONGUSI.

“These tribes,” says Abernethy, “have their sacrifices as well as the Jews, but in a very inferior manner; because when they make an offering to a deity, it is not on account of their reverence or veneration towards that being. They imagine that if they sacrifice the *dog*, or any other animal which is agreeable to the spirits, they can conquer their enemies in battle, and shun all those calamities which are inflicted on the human species in this world. As for a future state, they imagine that no person can be unhappy. By offering sacrifices to the malevolent *spirits*, for it is seldom that they worship the benevolent *deity*, they think that they can avert his wrath.

“I have often observed that the Tongusi, of all the other tribes of Siberia, are those who pay the greatest attention to this religious ceremony; for whenever they labour under diseases, or scarcity of food, they first offer a sacrifice and then set out to hunt, fully convinced of their success. Their mode of offering sacrifices is attended with many ceremonies which are

performed by their bravest warriors. Having lighted a fire, they take a dog and sometimes a bear, which they suspend above the fire by several poles, till the animal is totally consumed. It is customary among some Tongusian tribes, to dance during the sacrifice; there are others, however, who stand silent and motionless till the offering is completed. Then a dance commences which lasts for several hours, as if rejoicing for appeasing the angry *demon*. Before they go to battle, they never fail to make an offering. Then all their villages are assembled and they form a kind of procession. The women walk one after another, till they arrive at the spot where the sacrifice is to be offered. This place is generally some elevated ground, at some distance from the village. The warriors march in full uniform, with their faces painted. Before the *dog* is committed to the flames, they whisper something in his ear, telling him, as I have been told, to obtain for them the assistance of the *great* or *benovolent* spirit in battle, and prevent the *evil* or *mischievous* one from punishing them."

Sautini says that the Coriaks and Kamschadales offer sacrifices of the same kind, and in the same manner. Elphinstone observed sacrifices among other Siberian tribes. La Roche, in describing the religion of certain tribes in Tartary, says, that dogs, bears, and sometimes sheep are offered by them to their *Great Spirit*.

---

#### FUNERAL RITES AMONG THE NORTH AMERICAN INDIANS.

"As soon as the sick person dies," says the Bishop of Mieux, "the place is filled with mournful cries; and this lasts as long as the family is able to defray the expence, for they must keep an open table all this time. The dead body, dressed in the finest robe, with the face painted, the arms and all that belonged to the deceased by his side, is exposed at the door of the cabin in the posture it is to be laid in the tomb; and this posture is the same in many places, as that of the child in the mother's womb. The custom of some nations is for the relations of the deceased to fast to the end of the funeral; and all this interval is passed in tears and cries, in treating their visitors, in praising the dead, and in mutual compliments. In other places they hire women to weep, who perform their duty punctually; they sing, they dance, they weep without ceasing, always keeping time; but these demonstrations of a borrowed sorrow do not prevent what nature requires from the relations of the deceased. They carry the body without ceremony to the place of inter-

men  
whe  
man  
lined  
bins.  
thing  
The  
serv  
of h  
mori  
the l  
thes  
appa  
of w  
thes  
his h  
it ma  
num  
mind  
fore  
they  
  
why  
in fav  
the l  
have  
woul  
that  
and i  
all th  
the g  
your  
  
his b  
depa  
The  
their  
guez  
and  
their  
natio  
Othe  
dry  
whic  
serv  
Befo

ment; at least, I find no mention about it in any relation; but when it is in the grave, they take care to cover it in such a manner, that the earth does not touch it; it lies in a little cave lined with skin, much richer and better adorned than their cabins. Then they set up a post on the grave, and fix on it every thing that may show the esteem they had for the deceased. They sometimes put on it his portrait and every thing that may serve to shew to passengers who he was, and the finest actions of his life. They carry fresh provisions to his tomb every morning; and as the dogs and other beasts do not fail to reap the benefit of it, they are willing to persuade themselves that these things have been eaten by the souls of the dead.

“It is not strange after this, that the savages believe in apparitions; and in fact, they tell stories of this sort all manner of ways. I knew a poor man, who, by continually hearing these stories, fancied that he had always a troop of ghosts at his heels; and as people took a pleasure to increase his fears, it made him grow foolish; nevertheless, at the end of a certain number of years, they take as much care to efface out of their minds the remembrance of those they have lost, as they did before to preserve it; and this is solely to put an end to the grief they felt for their loss.

“Some missionaries one day asking their new converts, why they deprived themselves of their most necessary things in favour of the dead? They replied, ‘It is not only to shew the love we bore to our relations, but also that we may not have before our eyes, in the things they used, objects which would continually renew our grief.’ It is also for this reason that they forbear, for some time, to pronounce their names; and if any other of the family bears the same name, he quits it all the time of mourning. This is probably also the reason why the greatest outrage that can be done a person, is to say to him, *your father is dead, or, your mother is dead.*

“When any one dies in the time of hunting, they expose his body on a very high scaffold, and it remains there till the departure of the troop, who carry it with them to the village. There are some nations who practice the same with regard to all their dead; and I have seen the same practiced by the *Missisaguez* of Detroit. The bodies of those who die in war are burnt, and their ashes brought back to be laid in the burying place of their fathers. These burying places, among the most settled nations, are places like our church-yards, near the village.—Others bury their dead in the woods, at the foot of a tree, or dry them and keep them in chests till the festival of the dead, which I shall presently describe; but in some places they observe an odd ceremony for those that are drowned or are frozen. Before I describe it, it is proper to tell that the savages believe

when these accidents happen, that the spirits are incensed, and that they are not appeased till the body is found. Then the preliminaries of tears, dances, songs, and feasts being ended, they carry the body to the usual burying place; or if they are too far off, to the place where it is to remain till the festival of the dead. they dig there a very large pit, and they make a fire in it; then some young persons approach the corpse, cut out the flesh in the parts which had been marked out by a master of the ceremonies and throw them into the fire with the bowels; then they place the corpse thus mangled, in the place destined for it. During the whole operation, the women, especially the relations of the deceased, go continually round those that are at it, exhorting them to acquit themselves well of their employment, and put beads of porcelain in their mouths, as we would give sugar plums to children to entice them to do what we desire.

“ The interment is followed by presents, which they make to the afflicted family; and this is called *covering the dead*. These presents are made in the name of the village and sometimes in the name of the nation. Allies also make presents at the death of considerable persons. But first the family of the deceased make a great feast in his name, and this feast is accompanied with games, for which they propose prizes which are performed in this manner. A chief throws on the tomb, three sticks about a foot long; a young man, a woman, and a maiden, take each of them, and those of their age, their sex, and condition, strive to wrest them out of their hands. Those with whom the sticks remain are conquerors. There are also races and they sometimes shoot at a mark. In short, by a custom which we find established in all the times of Pagan antiquity, a ceremony entirely mournful is terminated by songs and shouts of victory.

“ It is true that the family of the deceased take no part in these rejoicings; they observe even in his cabin, after the obsequies, a mourning, the laws of which are very severe; they must have their hair cut, and their faces blacked; they must stand with their faces wrapped in a blanket; they must not look at any person, nor make any visits, nor eat any thing hot; they must deprive themselves of all pleasures, wear scarcely any thing on their bodies, and never warm themselves at the fire, even in the depth of winter.

“ After this deep mourning which lasts two years, they begin a second more moderate, which lasts two or three years longer, and which may be softened by little and little; but they dispense with nothing that is prescribed, without the consent of the cabin to which the widow or widower belongs. These permissions as well as the end of the mourning, always cost a feast

dians  
ceive  
whom  
on his  
weep  
nature  
ing to  
is, the  
violence  
their

“  
have  
they  
they  
place,  
is ren  
ten ye

“  
and h  
and re  
singul  
They  
they  
for ev  
day a  
proces  
one la  
time  
the m  
religio  
creas

“  
and p  
cels;  
their  
they  
the fil  
they  
cessio  
burde  
contin  
of gri  
mains  
by a

“  
are a



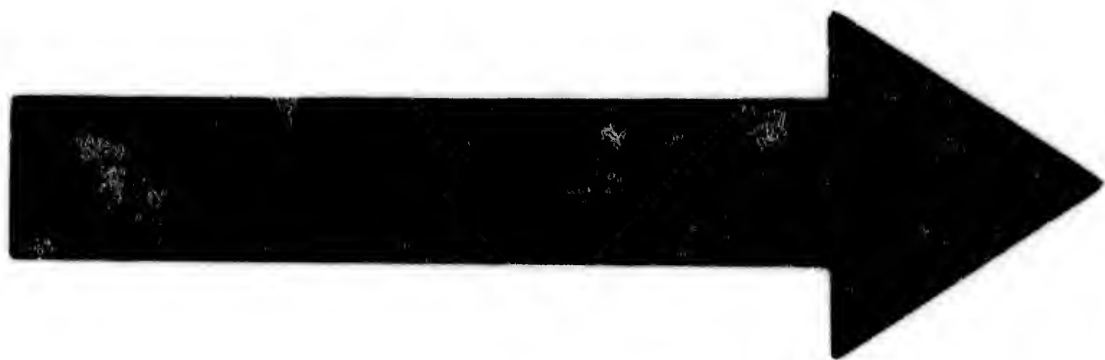
"The first and often the only compliment which the Indians make to a friend, and even to a stranger whom they receive in their cabins, is to weep for those of his own relations, whom he has lost since he saw him last. They put their hands on his head, and they give him to understand who it is they weep for, without mentioning his name. All this is founded in nature and has nothing in it of barbarity. But what I am going to speak of, does not appear to be any way excusable; that is, the behaviour of these people towards those who die by a violent death, even though it is in war, and for the service of their country.

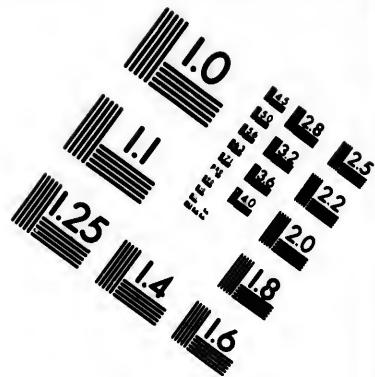
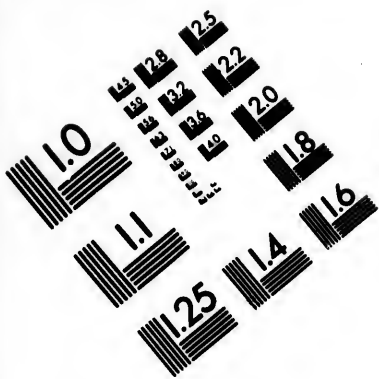
"They have got a notion that their souls, in the other world, have no communication with the others; and on this principle they burn them, or bury them directly, sometimes even before they expire. They never lay them in the common burying place, and they give them no part in the great ceremony, which is renewed every eight years among some nations, and every ten years among the Hurons and Iroquois.

"They call it the *festival of the dead*, or the *feast of souls*; and here follows what I could collect that was most uniform and remarkable concerning this ceremony, which is the most singular, and the most celebrated of the religion of the savages. They begin by fixing a place for the assembly to meet in; then they chose the king of the feast, whose duty it is to give orders for every thing, and to invite the neighbouring villages. The day appointed being come, all the savages assemble, and go in procession two and two to the burying place. There every one labours to uncover the bodies; then they continue some time contemplating in silence a spectacle so capable of exciting the most serious reflections. The women first interrupt this religious silence, by sending forth mournful cries, which increase the horror with which every one is filled.

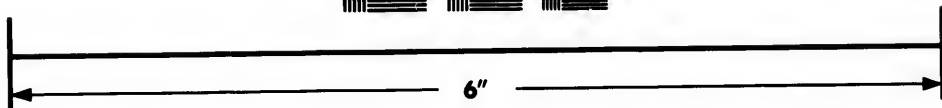
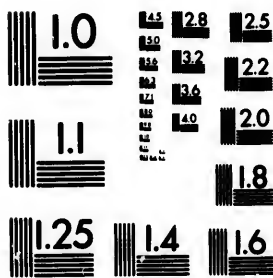
"This first act being ended, they take up the carcasses, and pick up the dry and separated bones, and put them in parcels; and those who are ordered to carry them, take them on their shoulders. If there are any bodies not entirely decayed, they wash them; they clean away the corrupted flesh, and all the filth, and wrap them in new robes of beaver skins; then they return in the same order they came; and when the procession is come into the village, every one lays in his cabin the burden he was charged with. During the march, the women continue their lamentations, and the men show the same signs of grief as they did on the day of the death of those whose remains they have been taking up. This second act is followed by a feast in each cabin, in honour of the dead of the family.

"The following days they make public feasts; and they are accompanied as on the day of the funeral, with dances,





**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503

1.5 1.8 2.0 2.2 2.5  
3.6 4.5 5.6 7.1 9.0  
11.2 14.0 18.0 22.5 28.8  
36.0 45.0 56.2 71.2 90.0

10  
11  
12  
15  
20  
25  
31.5  
40  
50  
63  
80  
100

games, and combats, for which there are also prizes proposed. From time to time they make certain cries, which they call the *cries of the souls*. They make presents to strangers, among whom there are sometimes some who come an hundred and fifty leagues, and they receive presents from them. They also take advantage of these opportunities to treat of common affairs, or for the election of a chief. Every thing passes with a great deal of order, decency and modesty; and every one appears to entertain sentiments suitable to the principal action. Every thing, even in the dances and songs, carries an air of sadness and mourning; and one can see in all hearts pierced with the sharpest sorrow. The most insensible would be affected at the sight of this spectacle. After some days are past, they go again in procession to the great council room, built for the purpose; they hang up against the walls the bones and the carcasses in the same condition they took them from the burying place, and they lay forth the presents designed for the dead. If among these sad remains there happens to be those of a chief, his successor gives a great feast in his name, and sings his song. In many places the bones are carried from village to village, and they are received every where with great demonstrations of grief and tenderness. Whithersoever they go, they receive presents. Lastly, they carry them to the place where they are to remain always. But I forgot to mention that all these marches are made to the sound of their instruments, accompanied with their best voices, and that every one in these marches keep time to the music.

“ This last and common burial place is a great pit, which they line with their finest furs and the best things they have. The presents designed for the dead are set by themselves. By degrees as the procession arrives, each family range themselves on a kind of scaffolds set up round the pit; and the moment the bones are laid in, the women renew their weeping and wailing. Then all present go down into the pit, and every one takes a little of the earth, which they keep carefully. They fancy it procures luck at play. The bodies and the bones, ranged in order, are covered with entire new furs, and over that with bark, on which they throw stones, wood and earth. Every one returns to his own cabin; but the women come for several days after, and pour *Sagamitty* on the place.”

---

#### FUNERAL RITES AMONG THE CORIAKS, TONGUSI, AND KAMSCHADALES.

We are told by several travellers that mourning for the dead is common among the various tribes that inhabit Siberia;

and  
ridic  
whic  
their  
breat  
can p  
mera  
are h  
corps  
fore  
"evin  
family  
sever  
their  
They  
imagi  
balmi  
corps  
of pre  
panyi  
wome  
but th  
rest r  
decca  
a near  
to per  
monic  
black,  
side v  
lamer  
riaks  
pits a  
famig  
herbs  
who  
Santi  
gusi a  
was c  
disting

THE

gener  
and s

proposed.  
 They call the  
 ers, among  
 hundred and  
 They also  
 common af-  
 asses with  
 every one  
 pal action.  
 s an air of  
 rts pierced  
 ould be af-  
 s are past,  
 n, built for  
 es and the  
 a the bury-  
 r the dead.  
 those of a  
 , and sings  
 om village  
 a great de-  
 er they go,  
 o the place  
 ention that  
 truments,  
 ne in these

pit, which  
 they have.  
 lves. By  
 themselves  
 e moment  
 eeping and  
 every one  
 y. They  
 nes, rang-  
 r that with  
 Every one  
 veral days

and that they have their funeral ceremonies, which are very ridiculous. They meet their fate with a degree of fortitude which is inspired by hopes of being rendered more happy after their departure from this world. Whenever the dying person breathes his last, they dress the corpse in the finest robes they can procure. Their presents to the deceased are also innumerable. In carrying their dead bodies to the grave, women are hired to weep, mourn, and sing melancholy airs. The corpses are, however, exposed for several days on scaffolds before they are interred. "The Tongusi," says Abernethy, "evinced a great deal of tenderness at the death of any of their family; their mourning sometimes lasts for a whole year. For several days they are commonly exposed on scaffolds within their cabins, and at other times near the place of interment. They bring them presents and food, which is consumed, they imagine, by their spirits. The Coriaks have a practice of embalming their dead in caves where the earth does not touch the corpse. I have seen among them several bodies in a good state of preservation, after being dead for several years. In accompanying the remains of the deceased to the burying ground, the women form a procession in which they walk one after another; but these are the women who are hired to weep and sing; the rest move onwards irregularly. All the brave deeds of the deceased are enumerated, publicly by a *crier*, who is generally a near relation of him whose memory and fame he endeavours to perpetuate. The Kamschadales use almost the same ceremonies, but among them the female mourners paint themselves black, and remain so for ten days, during which time they reside with the friends and relations of those whose death they lament." Santini and La Roche say that the Tongusi and Coriaks mourn for the deceased for a considerable time; that the pits and caves where the dead are to be carried, must first be fumigated or incensed by burning rosin or some dried aromatic herbs. La Roche observed in Kamschatka several women who sang, wept and danced at the interment of their dead. Santini was informed that it was customary among the Tongusi and Coriaks to bury, along with the dead, every thing that was dear to them while alive, especially their arms and family distinctions.

---

### THE FESTIVAL OF DREAMS AMONG THE NORTH AMERICAN INDIANS.

ONGUSI,

g for the  
 Siberia;

I know not if religion has ever had any share in what they generally call the festival of dreams, and which the Iroquois, and some others, have more properly called *the turning of the*



*brain.* This is a kind of *Buchanel*, which commonly lasts fifteen days, and is celebrated about the end of winter.

They act at this time all kinds of fooleries, and every one runs from cabin to cabin, disguised in a thousand ridiculous ways; they break and overset every thing, and nobody dares to contradict. Whoever chuses not to be present in such a confusion, nor be exposed to all the tricks they play, must keep out of the way. If they meet any one they desire him to guess their dreams, and if they do, it is at their expence, for he must give the thing he dreamt of. When it ends, they return every thing, they make a great feast, and they only think how to repair the sad effects of the masquerade, for most commonly it is no trifling business; because this is also one of those opportunities which they wait for, without saying any thing, to give those a good drubbing who, they think, have done them any wrong. When the festival, however, is over, all injuries are forgotten.

The following description of one of these festivals is found in the journal of one of the Missionaries, who was forced to be a spectator of it, much against his will, at *Onontague* :

“The approaching festival was proclaimed on the 22nd of February, by the elders, with as much gravity as if it had been a weighty affair of state. They had no sooner re-entered their cabin, than there came forth instantly, men, women, and children, almost quite naked, though the weather was excessively cold. They entered directly into all the cabins, then they went raving about on every side, without knowing whither they went or what they would have. One would take them for people who were drunk or mad.

“Many returned immediately to their cabins after uttering some howlings. Others were resolved to make use of the privilege of the festival, during which they are reputed to be out of their senses, and of consequence not responsible for what they do, and revenge their private quarrels. They did so to some purpose, for they threw whole pails-full of water on some people, and this water, which froze immediately, was enough to chill them with cold. Others they covered with hot ashes, or all sorts of filth; others took lighted coals, or firebrands, and threw them at the head of the first they met; others broke every thing in the cabins, falling on those they bore a grudge to, and beating them unmercifully. To be freed from this persecution, one must guess dreams, which often no one can form any conception of.”

“A missionary and his companion were often on the point of being more than-witnesses of these extravagancies; one of these mad-men went into a cabin, where he had seen them take a shelter at the first. Being disappointed by their flight, he

cried  
diate  
Fren  
a Fre

turn,  
villag  
to his  
all th  
which  
on th  
He w  
could  
open  
extin  
villag  
to hin  
said i  
the ki  
secon  
stantl

“  
He dr  
cover  
He eq  
their  
club i  
yellin  
roof a  
could  
got so  
grave  
in the  
in the  
with a  
and er  
was a  
ing he  
thousa  
some

“  
and a  
had m  
at onc  
it, and  
out off  
holdin

cried out that they must guess his dream, and satisfy it immediately: as they were to long about it, he said, 'I must kill a *Frenchman*.' Immediately the master of the cabin threw him a French coat, to which this mad-man gave several stabs.

"Then he that had thrown the coat, growing furious in his turn, said he would revenge the Frenchman, and burn the whole village down to the ground. He began, in fact by setting fire to his own cabin, where the scene was first acted; and when all the rest were gone out, he shut himself up in it. The fire which he had lighted up in several places, did not yet appear on the outside, when one of the missionaries came to the door. He was told what had happened, and was afraid that his host could not get out, though he might be willing; then he broke open the door and laid hold of the savage, turned him out and extinguished the fire. His host nevertheless ran through the village, crying out that he would burn it. They threw a dog to him, in hopes that he would glut his fury on that animal; he said it was not enough to repair the affront he had received by the killing of a *Frenchman* in his cabin. They threw him a second dog, which he cut in pieces. His fury was then instantly over.

"This man had also a brother who would play his part. He dressed himself up nearly as painters represent the Satyrs, covering himself from head to foot with the leaves of *Maiz*. He equipped two women like real *Megaras*, their heads blacked, their hair dishevelled, a wolf's skin over their bodies, and a club in their hands. Thus attended, he goes into all the cabins, yelling and howling with all his strength. He climbs on the roof and plays as many tricks there as the most skilful dancer could perform; then he made most terrible outcries, as if he had got some great hurt; then he came down and marched on gravely, preceded by his two *Bacchantes*, who, growing furious in their turn, overset with their clubs every thing that met them in their way. They were no sooner out of this frenzy, or tired with acting their parts, than another woman took their place and entered the cabin in which were the two missionaries. She was armed with a blunder buss, which she had just got by having her dream guessed. *She sang the war song*, making a thousand imprecations on her self, if she did not bring home some prisoners."

"A warrior followed close after this *Amazon*, with a bow and arrow in one hand, and a bayonet in the other. After he had made himself hoarse with bawling, he then threw himself all at once on a woman, who was standing quietly by, not expecting it, and lighting up his bayonet to her throat, took her by the hair, cut off a handful and went away. Then a juggler appeared, holding a stick in his hand adorned with feathers, by means of

which he boasted that he could reveal the most secret things. A savage accompanied him, carrying a vessel I know not what liquor, which from time to time he gave him to drink : the juggler had no sooner taken it in his mouth, than he spit it out again, blowing on his hands and his stick, and at every time he explained all the enigmas that were proposed to him.

“ Two women came afterwards, and gave to understand that they had some desires, one directly spread a mat on the ground ; they guessed that she desired some fish, which was given her. The other had a hoe in her hand, and they judged that she desired a field to cultivate : they carried her out of the village and set her to work. A chief had dreamt as he said, that he saw two human hearts : they could not explain his his dream, and at this every body was greatly concerned. It made a great noise, the even prolonged the festival for a day, but all was in vain and he was obliged to make himself easy without. Sometimes there were troops of people that made sham-lights ; sometimes companies of dancers who acted all sorts of farces. This madness lasted four days, and it appeared that it was out of respect to the two missionaries that they had thus shortened the time .

“ But there weré as many disorders committed in this space of time, as they used to do in fifteen days, nevertheless they had this regard for the missionaries, that they did not disturb them in their functions, and did not hinder the christians from discharging themselves of their religious duties. Let this suffice to give the reader some idea concerning their festivals of dreams.”

---

#### FESTIVAL OF DREAMS AMONG THE TONGUSI, CORIAKS, AND KAMSCHADALES

Several travellers who visited the north east parts of Asia mention several festivals and among them rejoicings called the *Nokoosi* or interpretations of dreams. In a certain season of the year we are told by Santini, that all the young people of both sexes among the *Coriaks* assemble in order to guess dreams.— These merriments and entertainments, he tells us, continue for several days, during which time dances, songs, and music, form the principal part of the entertainment. According to Abernethy they paint and disguise themselves when they go abroad without paying any respect either to morality or decency.— Many of them, especially among the *Tongusi*, says the same author, consider this a favourable opportunity of revenging insults and injuries, because they imagine that they are not known to the sufferer. La Roche compares the *Nokoosi* of the *Kam-*

*scha*  
take  
of I  
the  
mas  
trich  
The  
do t  
cust  
neth  
occa  
tells  
dera  
bein  
sam  
mos  
the  
crib  
duri  
we  
thos  
Indi

TH

of  
has  
their  
a pe  
whic  
yell

tabl  
whic  
thro  
they  
is fo  
vers  
the  
less

his p  
for  
con  
agai

*schadales* with the *Carnavili* of the continent of Europe, which takes place yearly in Italy, Spain, Portugal, and in some parts of France before lent commences. During the celebration of the *Carnavili*, which lasts for fourteen days, those who join it masquerade themselves and are at full liberty to play all those tricks with impunity which cannot be considered criminal.—The Kamschadales, as well as the North American Indians, may do the same without punishment; because, according to their custom, every person makes himself as foolish as he can. Abernethy speaks of his having disguised himself on one of these occasions among the Coriaks for the sole purpose, as he himself tells us, of saving his life; because he considered them actually deranged, and consequently his life in danger on account of being a stranger and a foreigner. Santini found himself in the same predicament among some tribes of the Tongusi, and would most likely have been grossly insulted, had not his converts, the Tongusian princes, interfered in his behalf. Without describing the barbarous scenes which these travellers witnessed during these festivals among certain tribes in north-east Asia, we assure our reader that they were not much different from those which have been observed among the North American Indians on similar occasions.

---

#### THE GAME OF THE DISH, OR OF LITTLE BONES, AMONG THE NORTH AMERICAN INDIANS.

The *game of the dish* which, they also call the *game of the little bones*, is only played by two persons, each has six or eight little bones, which resemble apricot stones in their shape and bigness. On viewing them closely, however, a person can perceive six unequal surfaces, the two principal of which are painted, one black and the other white, inclining to yellow.

They make them jump up, by striking the ground, or the table, with a round and hollow dish, which contains them, and which they twist round first. When they have no dish, they throw the bones up in the air with their hands; if, on falling, they come all of one colour, he who plays wins five. There is forty up, and they subtract the numbers gained by the adverse party. Five bones of the same colour win, but one for the first time, but the second time they win the game, while a less number wins nothing.

He that wins the game continues playing. The loser gives his place to another, who is named by the markers of his side; for they make parties at first, and often the whole village is concerned in the game: oftentimes also one village plays against another. Each party chooses a marker; but he with-

draws when he pleases, which never happens, but when his party loses. At every throw, especially if it happens to be decisive, they make great shouts. The players appear like people possessed with an evil spirit, and the spectators are not more calm. They all make a thousand contortions, talk to the bones, load the spirits of the adverse party with imprecations, and the whole village echoes with howlings. If all this does not recover them back, the losers may put off the party till the next day; it costs them only a small treat to the company.

Then they prepare to return to the engagement, each invoking his genius, and throwing some tobacco in the fire to his honour. They ask him above all things for lucky dreams. As soon as day appears they go again to play; but if the losers fancy that the goods in their cabins made them unlucky, the first thing they do is to change them all. The great parties commonly last five or six days, and often continue all night. In the mean time, as all the persons present, at least those who are concerned in the game, are in an agitation that deprives them of reason, as they quarrel and fight, which never happens among the savages, but on these occasions, and in drunkenness, one may judge, if when they have done playing, they do not want rest.

The Indians are so superstitious, that these parties of play are often made by order of the Physician or at the request of the sick. There needs no more for this purpose than the dream of the one or the other. This dream is always taken for the order of some spirit; and then they prepare themselves for play with a great deal of care. They assemble for several nights to try, and to see who has the luckiest hand. They consult their *Genii*, they fast, the married persons observe continence; and all this to obtain a favourable dream. Every morning they relate what dreams they have had, and all those things which they dreamt of, were those which they thought lucky. They make a collection of all, and put them into little bags which they carry about with them. If any one has the reputation of being lucky, that is in the opinion of these people, of having a familiar spirit more powerful, or more inclined to do good, they never fail to make him keep near him who holds the dish. They even go to a great way sometimes to fetch him; and if, through age or any infirmity, he cannot walk, they will carry him on their shoulders.

They have often pressed the Missionaries to be present at these games, as they believe their guardian *Genii* are more powerful. It happened one day in a Huron village, that a sick person having sent for a juggler, this quack prescribed the game of the dish, and appointed a village at some distance from the sick person's residence, to play at. They immediately sent to ask the leave of their chief; it was granted, and they played.

When the game was ended, the sick person returned many thanks to the players for having cured her, as she said. But there was nothing of truth in all this; on the contrary, she was worse.

The ill humor of this woman and her relations fell on the Missionaries, who had refused to assist at the game, notwithstanding all the importunities they used to engage them; and in their anger for the little complaisance they shewed them on this occasion, they told them, by way of reproach, that since their arrival in this country, the *Genii* of the savages had lost their power. Such are the observations of a French missionary who resided a long time among the Hurons.

---

### GAME OF THE PATOONI AMONG THE KAM- SCHADALES.

The game of the Patooni, which La Roche briefly describes, was, from every appearance, originally the same as that of the *little bones* among the American Indians, although in Kamschatka sticks were substituted for bones. "It is surprising, says La Roche, to witness the simplicity and superstition of some of these people while they play some games. Before they set out to hunt, they frequently form a party to play the *Patooni*, which consists in throwing up in the air small sticks about the size of an orange, with four sides, and resembling the *dice* of the Europeans, because each side has a certain number. He who has the greatest number upwards, when they fall on the ground, is conqueror, and expects to be the most successful in the chase. It is considered, therefore a great favor to belong to the winner's party when they separate themselves into different companies, because they imagine that they cannot be utterly disappointed while they are the associates of him who is to kill the most."

Abernethy observed this and other frivolous games, which he did not deem worthy of any notice. Santini, in speaking of a certain game which he does not describe, says, that the *Tongusi*, when they played, resembled madmen more than rational beings, from the way in which their feelings were excited.

---

### THE NAMING OF CHILDREN AMONG THE NORTH AMERICAN INDIANS.

This ceremony is performed at a feast where no persons are present but those of the same sex with the child that is to be



named. While they are eating, the child is upon the knees of the father or mother, who continually recommend it to the spirits, especially to that which is to be its Guardian Genius; for every person has their own, but not at their birth. They never make new names; each family has a certain number, which they take by turns, sometimes also they change their names as they grow up, and there are some names which they cannot go by after a certain age; this, however, is not the custom every where. They never call a man by his proper name, when they talk to him in common discourse; this, they imagine, would be impolite. They always give him the quality he has with respect to the person that speaks to him; but when there is between them no relation or affinity, they use the term of brother or uncle, nephew or cousin, according to each other's age, or according to the value they have for the person whom they address.

Further, it is not so much to render the names immortal, that they revive them, as to engage those to whom they are given, either to initiate the brave actions of their predecessors, or to revenge them if they have been killed or burnt, or lastly to comfort and help their families. Thus, a woman who has lost her husband, or her son, and finds herself without the support of any person, delays as little as she can to transfer the name of him she mourns for, to some person capable of supplying his place. They change their names on many other occasions, to give the particulars of which would take up too much time. There needs no more for this purpose than a dream, or the order of a Physician, or some such trifling cause.

---

#### THE NAMING OF CHILDREN AMONG THE KAM-SCHADALES &c.

*“Si prepara, says Santini, dai Coriaki, un banchetto, quando vogliono nominare i fanciulli. Se sara una fanciulla 'bisogna che tutta la compagnia, eccetto il padre, sia composta di donne, e d'uomini solamente, eccetto la madre, se sara un ragazzo. Ogni famiglia ritiene gli stessi nomi che avevano ricevuti da loro antenati. Sovente volte pero, quando una vedova e maritata un'altra volta, il nuovo marito prende il nome di lui chi e morto.— I vecchi si chiamano dai giovani, i loro padri, e quelli della medesima eta, i loro fratelli.”*

According to Santini, the Coriaks and other tribes of Siberia, prepare a feast, when they are to name a child. If it be a boy, the ceremony is performed in the presence of men alone, excepting the mother of the child; and in the presence of women only, excepting the father, if it be a girl. Every family

have retained the names which have been delivered down to them by their ancestors; sometimes, however, when a widow, the name of the deceased is transferred to her new husband. Old men are generally by the young called *fathers*, and those of the same age *brothers*; La Roche tells us that the children of some Tartar tribes, who had been converted to christianity, were allowed to go only a week by the names which they received at the Baptismal Font; because they dreamt that the spirits of their fathers were offended at the changing of their names.

---

### JUGGLERS AMONG THE NORTH AMERICAN INDIANS.

These jugglers, according to the Bishop of Mieux, make a profession of corresponding only with what they call the beneficial *Genii*, and who boast of knowing by their means whatever passes in the most distant countries, and whatever shall come to pass in the most distant ages. They pretend to discover the use and nature of the most hidden diseases, and to have the secret of curing them; to discern in the most intricate affairs what resolution it is best to take; to explain the most obscure dreams; to obtain success to the most difficult undertakings, and to render the gods propitious to warriors and hunters. These pretended good *Genii* are, like all the *Pagan deities*, real devils, who receive homages that are due only to the true god, and whose deceits are still more dangerous than those of the *evil Genii*, because they contribute more to keep their worshippers in blindness.

It is certain, that amongst their agents the boldest are most respected. With a little artifice therefore, they easily persuade those who are brought up in superstition. Although they might have seen the birth of these impostors, if they take a fancy to give themselves a supernatural birth, they find people, who believe them on their word, as much as if they had seen them come down from heaven, and who take it for a kind of enchantment and illusion, that they thought them born at first like other men. Their artifices are, in general, so gross, and so common, that there are none but fools and children who are imposed upon by them. But when they act as Physicians, their skill is never doubted: for the greatest credulity is found in every country, concerning the recovery of health.

It has been asserted by persons whose words could not be suspected, that when these impostors shut themselves up in their stoves to sweat, and this is one of their most common preparations to perform their tricks, they differ very little from

the *Pythonissæes*, as the poets have represented them on the *Tripod*. They are seen to become convulsed, and possessed with enthusiasm, to acquire tones of the voice, and to do actions which appear to be beyond the strength of nature.

It is also asserted, that they suffer much on these occasions; so that there are some who do not readily engage, even when they are well paid, to give themselves up in this manner to the spirit that agitates them.

After coming out of these violent sweats, they go and throw themselves into cold water, even when it is frozen, without receiving any damage. This is a matter which physic cannot account for; however, it is certain that there is nothing supernatural in it.

---

### THE PONOMOOSI OR PROPHETS AMONG THE KAM-SCHADALES, CORIAKS, &c.

We are assured by Santini, Abernethy, and La Roche, that several tribes in the north-east parts of Asia have their prophets whom they call *Ponomoosi*. This deceitful order, they tell us predict their fate in battle and their success in the chase; and this knowledge they pretend to have received from their *deities*. They retire into the forest where they fast for several days. During this time they beat a drum, cry, howl, sing, and smoke. This preparation is accompanied with so many furious actions that one would take them for evil spirits.

These fortune-tellers are visited at night by their relations who bring them intelligence of every thing that happens in the villages during their absence. By these means they are enabled, on their return from their dens, to impose upon the credulous; because the first part of their prophecy consists of giving an account of all those who married, died, and returned from the chase since they departed. They seldom fail in giving a correct statement of these and other things, as their private informants are equally interested in the success of their prophecy, from an expectation of being remunerated.

“The *Ponomoosi* of the Coriaks, says Abernethy, are an inferior order of priests, who declare the will of their *deities*, and act as their interpreters; but in offering sacrifices, the *Ponomoosi* are never their priests. Their chief employment is to practise physic, in which they are sometimes successful, and to foretell the consequence of their wars and the chase. They practise physic on principles founded on the knowledge of simples, on experience, and on circumstances, as they do in other countries. To this knowledge they always join a great deal of superstition and imposture.”

Santini tells us that prophets of the same kind are held in great veneration among different tribes in Tartary; but that they do not use so many ridiculous ceremonies in their predictions.

---

### ORATORS AMONG THE NORTH AMERICAN INDIANS.

Among the Indians every tribe and every village have their *orators* as well as *priests*, *physicians*, and *jugglers*. In the public councils and in the general assemblies they have a right to plead the cause of criminals and plaintiffs. An European would scarcely believe their fluency of speech and the loftiness of their ideas. They speak for a long time and to the purpose. Nothing can be more pleasing than to witness the interest which the *orator* takes in defending those who employ him. On some occasions the women employ an *orator* who speaks in their names, if they imagine that their liberties are encroached on.

No person would think that the Indians in their original state, when they had no possessions, either public or private, nor any ambition to extend their power, should have so many affairs to be thus adjusted. It is true, that the Indians, as well as the rest of the human family, negotiated and carried on a kind of traffic among themselves, and especially with the Europeans since they became acquainted with each other. Under such circumstances, therefore, we need not feel astonished that they had also their courts of justice. They had, besides, some new treaties to conclude, to renew offers of service and mutual civility, to court alliances, and to join invitations in making war. Any business of this description, we are told, was conducted with dignity, great attention, and ability.

Their natural eloquence is acknowledged by every person who heard their orators speak. In order, therefore, that the reader may be convinced of these facts, we shall offer the following able observations of the *Quebec Mercury*, on Indian eloquence:

“ A few suns more and the Indian will live only in history. A few centuries and that history will be colored with the mellow romantic light in which time robes the past, and contrasted with the then present wealth and splendor of America, may seem so impossible, as to elicit from the historian a philosophic doubt of its authenticity. The period may arrive when the same uncertainty which hangs over the heroic days of every people may attend its records, and the stirring deeds of the

battle field and council-fire may be regarded as attractive fictions, or at the best as beautiful exaggerations.

"This is but in the nature of things. Actions always lose their reality and distinctness in the perspective of ages: time is their charnal house. And no memorials are to be lost or forgotten, as soon as those of conquered nations. Of the Angles and Saxons little more than a name has survived, and the Indian may meet no better fate. Even though our own history is enveloped in theirs, it is somewhat to be feared, that from neglect, the valuable cover will be suffered to decay, and care bestowed only on the precious contents. 'Be it so,' exclaimed some; 'what pleasure or profit is to be derived from the remembrance of such things? Let the wild legend be forgotten; they are but exhibitions of a savage life, teeming with disgusting excess, and brutal passion. They portray man in no interesting light; for with every redeeming trait, there rises on some a revolting characteristic in horrid contrast. Was he grateful? so was his revenge bloody and eternal. Was he brave? so was he treacherous. Was he generous? so was he crafty and cruel.'

"But a more philosophical mind would say, no! he presents a part of the panorama of humanity, and his extermination is an embodiment of a great principle—the same retreat of the children of the wilderness before the wave of civilization; hence arises a deep interest in his fortune, which should induce us to preserve, carefully and faithfully, the most trifling record of his greatness and degradation. At a time when barbarous nations elsewhere had lost their primitive purity, we find him the only true child of nature—the best specimen of man in his native simplicity. We should remember him as a study of human nature—as an instance of a strange mixture of good and evil passions. We perceive in him fine emotions of feeling and delicacy, and unrestrained systematic cruelty, grandeur of spirit and hypocritical cunning, genuine courage and fiendish treachery. He was like some beautiful spar, part of which is regular, clear and sparkling, while a portion impregnated with clay, is dark and forbidding.

"But above all, as being an engrossing subject to an American, as coming to us the only relic of the literature of the aborigines, and the most perfect emblem of their character, their glory and their intellect, we should dearly cherish the remains of their oratory. In these we see developed the motives which animated their actions, and the light and shadows of their very soul. The iron encasement of apparent apathy in which the savage had fortified himself, impenetrable at ordinary moments, is laid aside in the council room. The genius of eloquence burst the swathing bands of custom, and the Indian stands forth accessible, natural, and legible. We com-

mune with him, listen to his complaints, understand, appreciate and even feel his injuries.

“As Indian eloquence is a key to his character, so is it a noble monument of their literature. Oratory seldom finds a more auspicious field. A wild people, and region of thought, forbade feebleness; uncultivated, but intelligent and sensitive, a purity of idea, chastely combined with energy of expression, ready fluency and imagery now exquisitely delicate, now soaring to the sublime, all united to rival the efforts of any ancient or modern orator.

“What can be imagined more impressive, than a warrior rising in the council room to address those who bore the same scarred marks of their title to fame and the chieftainship? The dignified stature, the easy repose of limbs—the graceful gesture, the dark speaking eye, excite equal admiration and expectation. We would anticipate eloquence from an Indian. He has animating remembrances—a poverty of language, which exacts rich and apposite metaphorical allusions, even for ordinary conversation—a mind which, like his body, has never been trammelled and mechanised by the formalities of society, and passions which, from the very outward restraint imposed upon them, burnt more fiercely within. There is a mine of truth in the reply of Red Jacket, when called a warrior: ‘A warrior!’ said he; ‘I am an orator—I was born an orator.’

“There are not many speeches remaining on record, but even in this small number there is surely a rich yet varied vein of all the characteristics of true eloquence, that we even rise from their perusal with regret that so few have been preserved. No where can be found a poetic thought clothed in more captivating simplicity of expression, than in the answer of Tecumseh to Governor Harrison, in the conference at Vincennes. It contains a high moral rebuke, and a sarcasm heightened in effect by an evident consciousness of loftiness above the reach of insult. At the close of his address, he found that no chair had been placed for him, a neglect which Governor Harrison ordered to be remedied as soon as discovered. Suspecting, perhaps, that it was more an affront than a mistake, with an air of dignity elevated almost to haughtiness, he declined the seat proffered, with the words, ‘Your father requests you to take a chair,’ and answered as he calmly disposed himself on the ground: ‘My father? The sun is my father, and the earth is my mother. *I will repose upon her bosom.*’

“As they excelled in the beautiful, so also they possessed a nice sense of the ridiculous. There is a clever strain of irony, united with the sharpest taunt, in the speech of Garangula to De la Barre, the Governor of Canada, when that crafty Frenchman met his tribe in council, for the purpose of obtain-



ing peace, and reparation for past injuries. The European, a faithful believer in the maxim that '*En guerre ou la peau du lion ne peut suffire ily faut coudre un lopin de celle du regard,*' attempted to over-awe the savage by threats, which he well knew he had no power to execute. Garangula, who also was well aware of the weakness, replied, 'Yonondia, you must have believed when you left Quebec, that the sun had burnt up all the forests which render our country inaccessible to the French, or that the lakes had so overflowed their banks, that they had surrounded our castles, and that it was impossible for us to get out of them. Yes, surely you must have dreamed so, and *curiosity* of seeing so great a wonder has brought you so far. Hear, Yonondia : our *women* had taken their clubs, our *children* and *old* men had carried their bows and arrows into the heart of your camp, if our *warriors* had not disarmed them, and kept them back when your messengers came to our castle.' We cannot give a better idea of the effect of their harangues upon their own people, and at the same time a finer instance of their gratefulness when skilfully touched, than in the address to to the Wallah Wallahs by their young chief, the Morning Star. In consequence of the death of several of their tribe, killed in one of their predatory excursions against the whites, they had collected in a large body for the purpose of assailing them. The stern, uncompromising hostility with which they were animated, may be imagined from the words they chaunted on approaching to the attack : 'Rest, brothers, rest ! You will be avenged. The tears of your widows will cease to flow, when they behold the blood of your murderers, and on seeing their scalps, your children shall sing and leap with joy. Rest, brothers, in peace ! Rest, we shall have blood !' The last strains of the death-song had died away. The gleaming eye, burning with the desire of revenge—the countenance, fierce even through an Indian's cloak—the levelled gun and poised arrow, forbade promise of peace, and their superior force as little hope of successful resistance. At this moment of awful excitement, a mounted troop burst in between them, and its leader addressed his kindred : 'Friends and relations ! Three snows have only passed over our heads, since we were a poor, miserable people. Our enemies were numerous and powerful ; we were few and weak. Our hearts were as the hearts of children. We could not fight like warriors. and were driven like deer about the plain. When the thunder rolled, and the rains poured, we had no place save the rocks, whereon we could lay our heads. Is such the case now ? No ! We have regained possession of the land of our fathers, in which they and their fathers' fathers lie buried ; *our hearts are great within us, and we are now a nation.* Who has produced this change ? The

whi  
war  
frie  
revu  
save  
who  
scal

to h  
A re  
repl  
Whi  
war  
his i  
cas,  
obst  
fere  
peop  
rem  
un d  
well  
wom  
legs,  
and  
you  
And  
thes  
Wh  
perc  
cour  
com  
emp  
in a  
a wa  
leg

desir  
repo  
that,  
befo  
nied  
whe  
agai  
the  
and  
ings  
will

white man! And are we to treat him with ingratitude? *The warrior with the strong arm and great heart will never rob a friend.* The result was wonderful. There was a complete revulsion of feeling. The angry waves were quieted, and the savage, forgetting his enmity, smoked the calumet with those whom the eloquence of Morning Star alone had saved from his scalping knife.

"Fearlessness and success in battle were the highest titles to honor, and an accusation of cowardice was a deadly insult. A reproach of this kind to a celebrated chief received a chivalric reply. Kognethagecton, or as he was more generally called, White Eyes, at the time his nation was solicited to join in the war against the Americans, in our struggle for liberty, exerted his influence against hostile measures. His answer to the Senecas, who were in the British interest, and who, irritated by his obstinate adherence to peace, attempted to humble him, by reference to an old story of the Delawares being a conquered people, is a manly and dignified assertion of independence. It reminds one of the noble motto of the Frenchman; '*Je nestime un autre plus grand que moi lors que j'ai mon epee.*' 'I know well,' said he, 'that you consider us a conquered nation—as women—as your inferiors. You have, say you, shortened our legs, and put petticoats on us. You say you have given us a hoe and a corn-pounder, and told us to plant and pound for *you—you men—you warriors*. But look at me—am I not full grown? And have I not a warrior's dress? Ay! *I am a man*—and these are the arms of a man—and all that country is mine!' What a dauntless vindication of manhood, and what a nice perception of Indian character, is this appeal to their love of courage, and their admiration for a fine form, vigorous limbs, complete arms, and a proud demeanor! How effective and emphatic the conclusion, 'all that country is mine!' exclaimed in a tone of mingled defiance and pride, and accompanied with a wave of the hand over the rich country bordering on the Alleghany.

"This bold speech quelled for a time all opposition, but the desire to engage against the Americans, increased by the false reports of some wandering Tories, finally became so vehement, that, as a last resort, he proposed to the tribe to wait ten days before commencing hostilities. Even this was about to be denied him, and the term traitor beginning to be whispered around, when he rose in council, and began an animated expostulation against their conduct. He depicted its inevitable consequences, the sure advance of the white man, and the ruin of his nation; and then, in a generous manner, disclaimed any interest or feelings separate from those of his friends; and added: 'But if you will go out in this war, you shall not go without me. I have

taken peace measures, it is true, with a view of saving my tribe from destruction. But if you think me in the wrong—if you give more credit to runaway vagabonds than to your own friends—to a man—to a warrior—to a Delaware—if you insist upon fighting the Americans—go! And I will go with you. *And I will not go like the bear hunter, who sets his dogs upon the animal, to be beaten about with his paws, while he keeps himself at a safe distance.* No! I will lead you on. I will place myself in the front. I will fall with the first of you. You can do as you choose. But as for me, I will not survive my nation. I will not live to bewail the miserable destruction of a brave people, who deserved, as you do, a better fate!

“The allusion to their greater confidence in foreigners than in their own kindred, is a fine specimen of censure, wonderfully strengthened by a beautiful climacteric arrangement. Commencing with a friend—and who so grateful as an Indian?—it passes to a man—and who so vain of his birth-right as an Indian?—then to a warrior; and who more glorious to the savage than the man of battles?—and lastly, to a Delaware—a word which rings through the hearts of his hearers, starts into life a host of proud associations, and while it deepens their contempt for the stranger and his falsehoods, imparts a grandeur to the orator, in whom the friend, the man, the warrior, the Delaware are personified.

“The spirit of the conclusion added to its force. It was the out-bursting of that firm determination never to forsake their customs and laws—that brotherhood of feeling which have ever inspired the action of the aborigines—a spirit which time has strengthened, insult hardened to obstinacy, and oppression rendered almost hereditary. It bespeaks a bold soul, resolved to die with the loss of its country’s liberties.

“We pass by the effect of this speech, by merely stating that it was successful, to notice a letter much of the same character as the close of the last, sent to General Clinch, by the chief who is now setting our troops at defiance in Florida. ‘You have arms,’ says he, ‘and so have we; you have powder and lead, and so have we; you have men, and so have we; your men will fight, and so will ours, *till the last drop of the Seminole’s blood has moistened the dust of his hunting ground.*’ This needs no comment. Intrepidity is their character.

“View these evidences of attachment to the customs of their fathers, and of heroic resolution to leave their bones in the forests where they were born, and which were their inheritance, and then revert to their unavailing, hopeless resistance against the march of civilization; and though we know it is the rightful natural course of things, yet it is a hard heart which does not feel for their fate. Turn to Red Jacket’s graphic description

of the fraud which purloined their territory, and shame mingles somewhat with our pity. 'Brothers, at the treaties held for the purchase of our lands, the white men, with *sweet voices* and *smiling faces*, told us they *loved* us, and they would not cheat us, but that the king's children on the other side of the lake would cheat us. When we go on the other side of the lake, the king's children tell us your people will cheat us. These things puzzle our heads, and we believe that the Indians must take care of themselves, and not trust either in your people or in the king's children. Brothers, our seats were once large, and yours very small. You have now become a great people, and we have *scarcely a place left to spread our blankets*.' True, and soon their graves will be all they shall retain of their once ample hunting grounds. Their strength is wasted, their countless warriors dead, their forests laid low, and their burial places upturned by the ploughshare. There was a time when the war-cry of a Pawhattan, a Delaware, or an Abenakis, struck terror to the heart of a pale-face; but now the Seminole is singing his last song.

"Some of the speeches of *Shenanâoah*, a celebrated Oneida chief, contain the truest touches of natural eloquence. He lived to a great age; and in his last oration in council, he opened with the following sublime and beautiful sentence: 'Brothers—I am an aged hemlock. *The winds of an hundred winters have whistled through my branches, and I am dead at the top.*' Every reader who has seen a tall hemlock, with a dry and leafless top surmounting its dark green foilage, will feel the force of the simile.—I am dead at the top. His memory, and all the vigorous powers of youth, had departed for ever.

"Not less felicitous was the close of a speech made by *Pushmataha*, a venerable chief of a western tribe, at a council held, we believe, in Washington, many years since. In alluding to his extreme age, and to the probability that he might not even survive the journey back to his tribe, he said: 'My children will walk through the forests, and the great spirit will whistle in the tree-tops, and the flowers will spring up in the trails—but Pushmataha will hear not—he will see the flowers no more. He will be gone. His people will know that he is dead. The news will come to their ears, *as the sound of the fall of a mighty oak in the stillness of the woods.*'

"The most powerful tribes have been destroyed; and as Sadekanatie expressed it, 'Strike at the root, and when the trunk shall be cut down, the branches shall fall of course.' The trunk has fallen, the branches are slowly withering, and shortly the question, *Who is there to mourn for Logan*, may be made of the whole race, and find not a sympathizing reply.

"Their actions may outlive, but their oratory we think

must survive their fate. It contains many attributes of true eloquence. With a language too barren, and minds too free for the rules of rhetoric, they still attained the power of touching the feeling, and a sublimity of style which rival the highest productions of their more cultivated enemies. Expression apt and pointed—language strong and figurative—comparisons rich and bold—descriptions correct and picturesque—and gesture energetic and graceful, were the most striking peculiarities of their oratory. The latter rations, accurate mirrors of their character, their bravery, immoveable stoicism, and a native grandeur, heightened as they are in expressiveness by the melancholy accompaniment of approaching extermination, will be as enduring as the swan-like music of Attica and Roman eloquence, which was the funeral song of the liberties of those republics."

These remarks, which allude to the state of the Indians of America, are evidently too true to require any comments; and as to Indian eloquence, we cannot hesitate a moment to admit the fact, when we consider that every rude nation whose languages are original, yet barren, use a style sublime and figurative, full of bold and beautiful expressions: and such was the style of Ossian; yet his language has never been cultivated, but left in its original grandeur and simplicity.

---

#### ORATORS AMONG SEVERAL ASIATIC TRIBES.

"I have seen no tribe in Siberia," says Abernethy, "who had not their councils, and courts of justice, with their orators, and public pleaders, who are by them called *Periotsi-Kalosi*, that is, *men of justice*. The orators of the *Makouri*, a tribe of the Tongusian nation, displayed no small degree of talents and eloquence on a certain occasion when a young man, the son of their respective chief, appeared before one of their courts of justice, accused of having murdered his uncle. His own father presided with as much dignity and pomp, as usually attend the judges and courts of more civilized nations. The venerable chief evinced a firm determination to administer justice, even although by the law his son should be put to death, if found guilty. The heads of every family were seated round the chief, whom he addressed briefly in the following manner:—  
*'My brother has been murdered; my son stands before you now, and for you it is to find out whether he is guilty or not. The law of your nation demands blood for blood; because such were the laws of our forefathers.'* An orator, tall and grave, fluent and rather eloquent, stood in the centre of the circle and har-

angued for an hour to defend the young chief; and if I recollect well, he commenced with these words: '*Ponyong is gone to his fathers—he is dead, but not murdered; for who would take the life of him who bore the wounds of fifty battles? His nephew stands before you as if he had spill the blood of his own kindred: they say, it is true, that he is the murderer; but who are they that accuse him? Are they not they whose words should not be believed? Have they fought either for you or their country? They never saw the face of an enemy. Has he not fought already? Has he not led you to the field? Has he not conducted you victorious from the battles in the absence of his father? If you destroy him you destroy an innocent man, the pride of your nation, and the conqueror of your enemies.*' This, however, will suffice as a specimen of Siberian oratory. His feelings appeared to be very much excited as his innumerable but natural gestures expressed. Whether it was through his eloquence, or their regard for the life of the accused, I know not, but the young chief was not found guilty."

La Roche mentions the natural eloquence of the orators of the Kamschadales. Santini says, that among different nations in Tartary and Siberia, orators plead at their councils and courts of justice.

---

### THE COUNCILS AND GOVERNMENT OF VILLAGES, AMONG THE NORTH AMERICAN INDIANS.

We are told by travellers and missionaries that the Indians, even when they were first visited by Europeans, conducted themselves in their assemblies with such prudence, maturity, and ability, as would do honor to the Areopagus of Athens, and the Senate of Rome, in the most flourishing times of those Republics. Nothing is concluded hastily, and that self-interest which so often corrupts the senator of civilized nations, never prevailed in the Indians when they discussed affairs which related to the public good. It is also true, that they possess, in the highest degree, the art of concealing their proceedings. For the most part, the glory of the nation, and the motives of honour, are the chief objects at which they aim. But what cannot be excused, is that almost all the time, during which they sit in council, is consumed in concocting plans in order to revenge their enemies; this, however, can only be remedied by the christian religion, although some christians are as vindictive as any savage.



“As to what relates to private persons,” says the Bishop of Mieux, “and the particular concerns of the village, these things are soon decided among some nations; but among other tribes they are referred to higher courts, and considerable time may elapse before they are settled. A single affair, however trifling it may, is, sometimes, a long time under deliberation. Every thing is treated with a great deal of circumspection, and nothing is decided till they have heard the opinion of all their elders. If they have made a present to an elder, in order to secure his vote, they are sure of his interest, when the present is accepted. It was never heard, that an Indian failed in an engagement of this kind; but he seldom accepts it, and when he does, he never receives it with both hands. The young people enter early into the knowledge of business, which renders them serious and mature in an age in which they are yet children. This interests them in the public good from their early youth, and inspires them with an emulation which is cherished with great care, and from which there is reason to expect great benefits.

“The most apparent defect of their government, is, the want of punishment for crimes. But this defect has not the same effect among them, which it would inevitably have with European nations. The great spring of our passions, and the principal source of the disorders which most disturb civil society, which is *self-interest*, have scarcely any power over people, who never think of laying up riches, and who take little thought for the morrow. They may also be reproached for their manner of bringing up their children. They know not what it is to chastise them. Whilst they are little, they say they have no reason; neither are they of opinion, that punishment promotes understanding. When they are old enough to reason, they say that they are the masters of their own actions, and that they are accountable to no person for them.

“In a word the American Indians are entirely convinced that man is born free; that no power on earth has any right to make any attempts against his liberty; and that nothing can make him amends for its loss. We have even had much pains to undeceive those converted to christianity on this head, and to make them understand, that in consequence of the corruption of our nature, which is the effect of sin, an unrestrained liberty of doing evil differs little from the necessity of doing it, considering the strength of the inclination, which carries us to it; and that the law which restrains us, brings us nearer to our first liberty, in seeming to deprive us of it. Happy for them, experience does not make them feel in many material articles all the force of this bias, which it produces in other countries. As their knowledge is more confined than ours, so are their

desires still more so. Being used only to the simple necessities of life which providence has sufficiently provided for them, they have scarcely any idea of superfluity.

### COUNCILS AND GOVERNMENT AMONG ASIATIC NATIONS.

*"Tutte le nazioni,"* says Santini, *"che si trovano fra i Tongusi, Coriaki, Kamschadali e molte altre in quella parte d' Asia settentrionale hanno dei conciglii, che sono composti del principe e dei maggiornati. Tutti gli affari che appartengono alla guerra, alla pace, alle regole della caccia, ed altre cose domestiche, sono qui esaminate."*

*"Quanto al loro governo, ogni cosa e regolata in questi conciglii. Il loro principe ancora regola molte querele da se stesso, senza andar al conciglio. L'omicidio e punito, pero, dagli amici di quello chi era stato ammazzato, e al loro piacere. Molti mi hanno detto che, benché l'omicidio secondo le loro leggi, e proibito sotto pena della vita, l'assassino e rarissime volte castigato colla morte; perche credono che l'omicidio era ordinato dallo spirito cattivo."*

Here we see, that according to Santini, all the different tribes among the Tongusi, Coriaks, Kamschadales and many others inhabiting the north-east parts of Asia, have councils composed of the chief and the elders. All the affairs which appertain to war, peace, the chase, and other domestic laws are here discussed and decided.

As to their government, I may say that these councils constitute their legislative assemblies; for in them their laws civil and military are framed and administered. The chief also decides many private quarrels on his own authority without referring to council. The punishment of a murder is at the mercy of the relations of the murdered. I was often told that although murder, according to law, should be punished with death, the murderer is seldom put to death, because they believe that it was the desire of their *evil Genii*, that such a thing should come to pass.

This has been confirmed by Abernethy and La Roche. Abernethy, however, observes that the Kamschadales and some Tartar tribes have war chiefs who preside at their councils of war, and lead their warriors to battle; and others who govern their villages, never leaving home. La Roche says, that he who remains at home, is the hereditary one; and that the war chief is elected by the warriors; however, he observed, that if the hereditary one was of a military and heroic disposition, he

would insist upon going to battle. We shall now proceed to give a promiscuous account of the manners and customs of the Indians, according to the journals of the Bishop of Mieux, Rossetti, Claude Allouez, Paul du Ru, M. de St. Cosme, and others, who were the first Missionaries that ever preached Christianity to the red men of North America when the Canadas were in the possession of the French. After that, we shall offer a general sketch of the manners and customs of different nations in north-east Asia, which will also in no small degree tend, by their coincidence, to prove the identity of the people—that is to say—that the North American Indians and these Asiatic tribes, were once united. The foregoing comparative views of the different customs of the American and Asiatic tribes will, no doubt, satisfy the reader; however, as we wish not only to prove an affinity between the inhabitants of both continents, but also to deliver down to posterity their national peculiarities before they disappear, it is but right, we think, to impart as much information as we possibly can.

---

#### VARIOUS CUSTOMS AMONG THE NORTH AMERICAN INDIANS.

**SHAPES WHICH THEY GIVE TO THEIR CHILDREN.**—There are, on the continent of America, some nations which they call *Flat Heads*. These have their foreheads very flat, and the top of their heads lengthened. This shape is not the work of nature;—it is the mothers who give it to their children as soon as they are born. For this end, they apply to their foreheads and the back part of their heads, two masses of clay, or some other heavy substance, which they bind by little till the skull has taken the shape they desire to give it. It appears that this operation is very painful to the children, whose nostrils emit some whitish matter; but neither this circumstance, nor the cries of these little innocents, alarm their mothers, as they are desirous of procuring them a handsome appearance, without which they cannot conceive how others can be satisfied. It is quite the reverse with certain Algonquins, named *Round Heads* or *Bowl Heads*; for they make their beauty consist in having their heads perfectly round, and mothers take care also very early to give them this shape.

**WHAT STRENGTHENS AND SHAPES THE INDIANS SO WELL.**—The children of the Indians when they leave the cradle, are not confined in any manner; and as soon as they can crawl upon their hands and feet, they let them go where they will,

proceed to  
toms of the  
Mieux, Ro-  
and others,  
Christianity  
was were in  
offer a ge-  
t nations in  
e tend, by  
e—that is to  
siatic tribes,  
ews of the  
bes will, no  
not only to  
continents,  
peculiarities  
o impart as

TH AME-

EN.—There  
ich they call  
and the top  
work of na-  
n as soon as  
reheads and  
some other  
ull has taken  
his operation  
t some whit-  
eries of these  
desirous of  
which they  
is quite the  
eads or Bowl  
having their  
o very early

NS SO WELL.  
e cradle, are  
y can crawl  
ere they will,

quite naked, into the water, into the woods, and into the snow, which makes their bodies strong, their limbs very supple, and hardens them against the injuries of the air ; but it makes them also subject to distempers of the stomach and lungs, which destroys them early. In summer, they run as soon as they are up, to the river, or into the lakes, and continue there a part of the day, playing like fish when it is fine weather at the surface of the water. It is certain that nothing is better than this exercise to make their joints free, and to render them nimble.

**THEIR FIRST EXERCISES.**—They put a bow and arrow into their hands betimes ; and in order to excite in them that emulation, which is the best teacher of the arts, there is no need to set their breakfasts on the top of a tree, as they did with the young *Lacedemonians*. They are all born with that passion for glory, that has no need of a spur ; and indeed they shoot with a surprising exactness, and with a little practice, they acquire the same dexterity in the use of fire arms. They make them also wrestle, and they pursue this exercise so eagerly, that they would often kill one another, if they were not parted. Those who are defeated, are so enraged at it, that they do not take the least repose till they have their revenge.

**IN WHAT CONSISTS THEIR EDUCATION.**—In general their fathers and mothers neglect nothing to inspire their children with certain principles of honor, which they preserve all their lives, but which they often abuse ; and in this their whole education consists. When they give their instructions on this head, it is always in an indirect way ; the most common is to relate to them the brave actions of their ancestors, or of their countrymen. These young people are fired at these stories, and are never easy till they find an opportunity of imitating the examples they have made them admire. Sometimes, to correct them for their faults, they use prayers and tears, but never menaces. They would make no impression on spirits, pre-possessed with an opinion that no person has a right to use compulsion.

**WORKS OF THE WOMEN.**—The little works of the women, and which are their common employment in the cabins, are to make thread of the inner membranes of the bark of a tree, which they call the *white wood*. They work it pretty nearly as Europeans do the hemp. The women also dye every thing. They make several works with bark, on which they work small figures with porcupine's quills. They make little cups or other utensils of wood : they embroider roe-buck skins, and they knit girdles and garters with the hair or wool of the *Buffaloes*.

**WORKS OF THE MEN.**—As for the men, they glory in their idleness; and, in reality, they pass above half of their lives in doing nothing, in the persuasion that daily labor disgraces a man, which, they imagine, should be the duty of the women. Man, they say, is only made for war, hunting, and fishing. Nevertheless, it belongs to them to make all things necessary for these three exercises; therefore, making arms, nets, and all the equipage of the hunters and fishers, chiefly belong to them, as well as the canoes and their rigging, the Raquets or snow shoes, and the binding and repairing of cabins; but they often oblige the women to assist them in all these things.

**THEIR TOOLS.**—These people, before they had been furnished with hatchets and other tools by Europeans, were greatly embarrassed in cutting down their trees and fitting them for use. They burnt them at the foot, and to split and cut them they used hatchets made of flints, which did not break, but took up a great deal of time to sharpen. To fix them in the handle, they cut off the head of a young tree, and, as if they would have grafted it, they made a notch in it, into which they thrust the head of the hatchet. After some time the tree, by growing together, kept the hatchet so fixed, that it could not come out; then they cut the tree to such a length as they would have the handle.

**THE FORM OF THEIR VILLAGES.**—Their villages have generally no regular form. The greatest part of the French Missionaries represent them as being of a round form, and perhaps their authors had not seen any but of this sort. These villages consisted of a heap of cabins without order; some like cart houses, others like tunnels, built of bark, supported by posts, sometimes plastered on the outside with mud in a coarse manner; in a word, built with less art, neatness, and solidity, than the cabins of the beaver. These cabins are about fifteen and twenty feet in breadth, and sometimes a hundred in length; then they contain several fires; for a fire never takes up more than twelve feet. When the floor is not sufficient for all the inhabitants to sleep on, the young people lay on a wide bench, about five or six feet high, that runs the whole length of the cabin. The furniture and provisions are over this, placed on pieces of wood put across under the roof. For the most part there is before the door a sort of porch, where the young people sleep in the summer, and which serves for a wood house in the winter. The doors are nothing but bark, fixed like the umbrella of a window, and they never shut close. These cabins have neither windows nor chimnies; but they leave an opening in the middle of the roof, by which part the smoke goes out;

and  
then

cert  
being  
in ge  
of th  
to ex  
but e  
ed, s  
on th  
near  
Alm  
grea  
Atal  
the A  
Bein

told,  
maid  
quer  
tradi  
doub  
shew  
whic  
hand  
amon  
serv

India  
on th  
they  
nies  
of th  
their  
prom  
grea  
a sor

only  
part  
acco  
prin

and they are obliged to cover it when it rains or snows, and then they must extinguish the fire lest they be blinded with smoke.

**THEIR NOTION OF THE ORIGIN OF MAN.**—Nothing is more certain than that the American Indians have an idea of a first being, but at the same time nothing is more obscure. They agree, in general, in making him the first spirit, the Lord and creator of the world, but when they are pressed a little on this article, to explain what they mean by the *first spirit*, we find nothing but odd fancies, fables so ill conceived, systems so little digested, and so little uniformity, that one can say nothing regular on this subject. It has been said that the Siout came much nearer than the rest to what we think of this *first principle*. Almost all the *Algonquin* nations have given the name of the *great Hare* to the first spirit; some call him *Michabou*, others *Atahocan*. The *Areskoui* of the *Hurons*, and the *Agrescoue* of the *Iroquois*, is, in the opinion of these people, the Supreme Being and the God of War.

**VESTALS AMONG THE INDIANS.**—In some memoirs we are told, that many nations of this continent had formerly young maids, who never had any conversation with man, and consequently never married; but we shall neither warrant nor contradict this assertion, because our authors appear somewhat doubtful on this point. It is true, however, that the Indians shew us some plants which, they say, are very salutary, but which have no virtue unless they are administered by virgin hands. It has also been related with greater confidence, that among the *Hurons* and *Iroquois* there were *hermits*, who observed continence.

**THEIR VOWS.**—It cannot be doubted that the vows of the Indians were pure acts of religion, and that they performed them on the same occasions as Christians do. For instance, when they were out of provisions, as it often happened in their journeys and huntings, they promised their *Genii*, to give in honor of them, a portion of the first beast they should kill to one of their chiefs, and not to eat till they should have performed their promise. If they find this impossible, because the chief is at a great distance, they burn what was designed for him, and make a sort of sacrifice.

**THEIR FASTS.**—Some have fancied that their fasts were only intended to accustom them to bear hunger, and it may partly be designed for this end; but all the circumstances which accompany them, leave no room to doubt that religion is the principal motive.



**THEIR THOUGHTS OF THE IMMORTALITY OF THE SOUL.—**

When we ask the Indians what they think of their souls, they tell us that they are, as it were, the shadows and the animated images of the body; and it is in consequence of this principle that they believe every thing is animated in the universe. Therefore, it is entirely by tradition that they hold that our souls do not die. In the different expressions they use to explain themselves on this subject, they often confound the soul with its faculties, and the faculties with their operations, though they very well know how to make the distinction when they choose to speak correctly.

**OF THE COUNTRY OF SOULS.—**The Indians believe that the souls, when they die, are to part for ever from their bodies, and that they go to a region which is appointed to be their everlasting abode. This country, say the Indians, is far to the west, and the souls are several months travelling thither. They have also great difficulties to surmount, and they run through great dangers before they go there. They speak especially of a river they have to pass where many have been wrecked; of a dog, from which it is not easy to defend one's self; of a place of torments, where they expiate their faults; of another where the souls of the prisoners of war who had been burnt, are tormented.

This notion is the reason why, after the death of these wretches, for fear their souls should stay about the cabins, to revenge their sufferings, they very carefully visit all places, striking continually with a stick, and sending forth hideous cries, to drive away these souls.

Without entering into details of other customs peculiar to the Asiatic tribes, to whom we have already so often alluded, we need only say, that the different practices which we have latterly described among the North American Indians, are common in Asia, especially among the Coriaks, Kamschadales, and others. Abernethy tells us, that among the Coriaks, the mothers give, as they imagine, a decorous form to their children, when infants, by applying three boards, one on the top to give them a flat head, and one on each side to give them a sharp forehead.

Whenever their children arrive at 12 years of age, they are to accompany the hunters into the forest, in order to imbibe while young a desire of excelling in that exercise. He who excels among these youths, receives presents from the village on their return home. Their education consists solely in hearing the brave actions of their forefathers.

both  
culti  
is re  
in w  
nity  
anci  
amo  
flint  
them  
as w  
soul  
befo

cide  
cont

AN

tiner  
in so  
Amo  
Pag  
Qub

peop  
ente  
man  
the  
and  
by a  
unde  
whic  
char  
babl  
whic  
was  
cenc  
tiner  
sons  
pub  
inter  
to b  
whic

The women are generally employed in making dresses, both for themselves and their family—they procure fuel and cultivate the soil; in short, they provide all the furniture which is required in their cabins. The men are generally engaged in war, hunting, or fishing. They deem labor beneath the dignity of man. Their hatchets, which they call *Maroski*, were anciently much the same as those which were originally used among the North American Indians: they were made of hard flint: sometimes they were observed to fell huge trees with them. The Tongusi observe fasts; they also perform vows as well as the North American Indians. They believe that the soul shall never die, and that it has to perform a long journey before it reaches its destination.

These, and many other customs among the Asiatics, coincide in a striking manner with the inhabitants of the western continent.

---

#### AN INDIAN CHIEF'S ACCOUNT OF THE ORIGIN OF THE N. A. INDIANS.

[The following journey of an Indian chief across the continent of North America, during the middle of last century, will in some measure tend to prove the Asiatic origin of the North American Indians. It has been reduced to writing by M. Le Page du Pratz, and communicated to the Literary Society of Quebec by Andrew Stuart, Esq.]

“It has been often conjectured, that America was originally peopled from Siberia or Tartary, and that these Asiatic tribes entered this continent by the way of *Kamschatka*. There are many reasons for believing that the new continent as well as the old, has been peopled by different races at different times, and that the last great change which took place, was produced by a great Siberian or Tartar invasion, similar to that which under *Gengiskhan* devastated the Chinese empire, and to that which overwhelmed the Roman empire. The exterminating character of these Asiatic tribes is well known, and it is probable that the whole race which built the forts, the vestiges of which are found between Lake Ontario and the gulf of Mexico, was utterly destroyed by these Siberian invaders, whose descendants we now see scattered over the North American continent. I do not mean here to enter on the grounds and reasons on which this opinion rests, but beg leave to lay before the public, facts relating to this subject, that seemed to me to be of interest to be found in a work not so generally known as it ought to be; this is the history of *Louisiana* by M. Le Page du Pratz, who gives the following account of the peopling of America:

'When the Natchez retired to this part of America, where I saw they were found to be several nations, or rather the remains of several nations; some on the east, and some on the west of the *Mississippi*. These are the people who are distinguished among the natives, by the name of *red men*; and their origin is so much the more obscure, as they have no tradition, nor arts and sciences like the Mexicans, from whence we might draw some satisfactory inferences. All that I could learn from them was, that they came from the North and the sun setting. This account they uniformly adhered to, whenever they gave an account of their origin. This lame tradition did not at all satisfy the desire I had of being informed on this subject. I made great inquiries to know if there was any old wise man among the neighbouring nations, who could give me further intelligence about the origin of the natives. I was happy enough to discover one, named *Moneacht-ape* among the *Yazons*, a nation about forty leagues north of the *Natchez*. This man was remarkable for his understanding and elevation of sentiments; and I may justly compare him to those first Greeks who travelled chiefly into the east to examine the manners and customs of different nations, and to communicate to their fellow citizens on their return, the knowledge which they had acquired. *Moneacht-ape*, indeed, never executed so noble a plan; but he had, however, conceived it. He was by the French called the interpreter, because he understood several of the North American languages; but the other name which I mentioned was given him by his own nation, and signifies the killer of pain and fatigues. This name was indeed most justly applicable to him; for to satisfy his curiosity he made light of the most dangerous and painful journeys in which he had spent several years of his life. He stayed two or three days with me, and on my desiring him to give me an account of his travels, he very readily complied with my request and spoke to the following effect:

"I had lost my wife and all the children I had by her. When I undertook my journey towards the sun rising, I set out from my village contrary to the inclination of all my relations. I went first to the *Chicasaws*, our friends and neighbours. I continued several days among them, to inform myself whether they knew whence we all came, or at least whence they came themselves; they who were our elders, since from them came the language of the country. As they could not inform me, I proceeded on my journey. I reached the country of the *Chasunous*, and afterwards went up the Wabash or Ohio, almost to its source, which is in the country of the *Iroquois* or five nations. I left them, however, towards the north, and during the winter, which is in that country very severe and long, I

lived in a village of the *Abenakis*, where I contracted an acquaintance with a man somewhat older than myself, who promised to conduct me the following spring to the great water. Accordingly when the snows were melted and the weather was settled, we proceeded eastward, and after several days journey, I at length saw the great water, which filled me with such joy and admiration, that I could not speak. Night drawing on, we took up our lodging on a high bank above the water, which was sorely vexed by the wind, and made so great a noise that I could not sleep. Next day the ebbing and flowing of the water filled me with great apprehension; but my companion quieted my fears by assuring me that the water observed certain bounds both in advancing and retiring. Having satisfied our curiosity in viewing the great water, we turned to the village of the *Abenakis*, where I continued the following winter; and after the snows were melted, my companion and I went and viewed the great fall of the river St. Lawrence at Niagara, which was distant from the village several days' journey. The view of this great fall at first made my hair stand on end, and my heart almost leapt out of its place; but afterwards before I left, I had the courage to walk under it. Next day we took the shortest road to *Ohio*, and my companion and I cutting down a tree on the bank of the river, we formed it into a *Pettiaugre*, which served to conduct me down the *Ohio* and the *Mississippi*, after which with much difficulty, I went up our small river; and at length arrived safe among my relations, who were rejoiced to see me in good health.

“ This journey instead of satisfying, only served to excite my curiosity. Our old men for several years, had told me that the ancient speech informed them that the red men of the north came originally much higher and much farther than the source of the river *Missouri*; and as I had longed to see, with my own eyes, the land whence our first fathers came, I took my precautions for my journey westwards. Having provided a small quantity of corn, I proceeded up along the eastern bank of the river *Missouri*, till I came to the *Ohio*. I went up along the bank of this last river about the fourth part of a day's journey, that I might be able to cross it without being carried into the *Mississippi*. There I formed a *Caugeux*, or raft of canes, by the assistance of which I passed over the river; and next day meeting with a herd of buffaloes in the meadows, I killed a fat one, and took from it the fillets, the bunch and the tongue. Soon after I arrived among the *Tamaroas*, a village of the nation of *Illinois*, where I rested several days and then proceeded northwards to the mouth of the *Missouri*, which after it enters the great river runs for a considerable time without intermixing its muddy waters with the clear stream of the other. Having

crossed the *Mississippi*, I went up the *Missouri* along its northern bank, and after several days journey I arrived at the nation of the *Missouri*, where I staid a long time to learn the language that is spoken beyond them. In going along the *Missouri* I passed through meadows a whole day's journey in length which were quite covered with buffaloes.

“ When the cold was past, and the snows were melted I continued my journey up along the *Missouri*, till I came to the nation of the west, or the *Cawras*. Afterwards in consequence of directions from them, I proceeded in the same course, near thirty days, and at length I met with some of the nation of *Otters* who were hunting in that neighbourhood and were surprised to see me alone. I continued with the hunters two or three days, and then accompanied one of them and his wife, who was near her time of lying in, to their village, which lay far off betwixt the north and west. We continued our journey along the *Missouri* for nine days, and then we marched directly north for five days, and met more of the *Otters* who received me with as much kindness as if I had been of their own nation. A few days after, I joined them when we came to the fine river which runs westward in a direction contrary to that of the *Missouri*, we proceeded down this river a whole day and arrived at a village, a party of the *Otters*, who were going to carry a *Calumet of peace* to a nation beyond them, and we embarked in a *Pettiaugre* and went down the river for eighteen days, landing now and then to supply ourselves with provisions. When I arrived at the nation who were at peace with the *Otters*, I stayed with them till the cold was past, that I might learn their language, which was common to most of the nations that lived beyond them. The cold was hardly gone when I embarked on the fine river, and in my course I met with several nations with whom I generally stayed but one night, till I arrived at the nation which is but one day's journey from the *great water* in the west. This nation lives in the wood about the distance of a league from the river, from the apprehension of bearded men, who come on their coasts in floating villages and carry off their children and make slaves of them. These men are described to be white with long white beard that came down to their breast. They were thick and short and had large heads covered with cloth; they were always dressed, even in the greatest heats; their clothes fell down to the middle of their legs, which with their feet were covered with red or yellow stuff. Their arms made a great fire and a great noise; and when they saw themselves out numbered by *red men*, they retired on board their large *Pettiaugres*; and their number, sometimes, amounted to thirty, but never more.

“ Those strangers came from the sun-setting, in search

of  
the  
the  
in  
no  
be  
ass  
wo  
thi  
car  
we  
my  
str  
ces  
on  
wa  
  
the  
a la  
long  
the  
we  
wer  
and  
kill  
not  
let  
live  
the  
nort  
my  
nigh  
thou  
exte  
after  
grea  
whe  
that  
and  
pear  
proc  
and  
I ha  
days  
me  
it w  
Yoz

of a yellow stinking wood, which dies a fine yellow color ; but the people of this nation, that they might not be tempted to visit them, destroyed all those kinds of trees. Two other nations in their neighbourhood, however, having no other wood, could not destroy them, and were still visited by these strangers ; and being greatly incommoded by them, had invited their allies to assist them in making an attack upon them the next time they would return. The following summer I accordingly joined in this expedition, and after travelling five long days' journey, we came to the place where the bearded men usually landed ; there we waited seventeen days for their arrival. The red men, by my advice, placed themselves in ambuscade to surprise the strangers, and accordingly, when they landed, we were so successful as to kill eleven of them ; the rest immediately escaped on board two large Pettiaugres and fled westward on the great water.

“ Upon examining those whom we had killed, we found them much smaller than ourselves, and rather fairer ; they had a large head, and in the middle of the crown the hair was very long ; their heads were wrapt in great many folds of stuff, and their clothes seemed to be made neither of wool nor silk, they were very soft, and of different colours : two only of those who were killed had fire arms, powder and ball. I tried their pieces and found that they were much heavier than ours and did not kill at so great a distance. After the expedition, I thought of nothing but proceeding on my journey, and with that design I let the *red men* return home, and joined myself to those who lived more westward on the coast, with whom I travelled along the coast of the *great water*, which bends directly betwixt the north and the sun-setting. When I arrived at the village of my fellow travellers where I found the days very long and the nights very short, I was advised by the old men to give up every thought of continuing my journey. They told me that the land extended a long way between the north and the sun-setting ; after which it ran directly west and at length was cut by the great water from north to south. One of them added that when he was young, he knew a very old man who had seen that distant land before it was cut away by the great water, and that when the great water was low, many rocks still appeared in those parts. Finding it therefore impracticable to proceed much farther on account of the severity of the climate and the want of game, I returned by the same route by which I had set out ; and reducing my whole travels westward to two days journey, I compute that they would not have employed me thirty-six moons ; but on account of my frequent delays it was five years before I returned to my relations among the Yozons.



“The remarkable difference I observed between the *Natchez* including in that name the nations whom they us brethren, and the other people of Louisiana, made me extremely desirous of knowing whence both of them originally came. We had not then that full the information which we have since received from the travels and discoveries of *M. De Lisle* in the eastern part of the Russian empire. I therefore applied myself one day to put the keeper of the temple in good humour, and having succeeded in that without much difficulty ; I then told him that from the little resemblance I observed between the *Natchez* and the neighbouring tribes, I was of the opinion that they were not originally from the same country, and that if the ancient speech taught him any thing on that subject, he would do me a great pleasure to inform me of it. At these words he leaned his head on his two hands with which he covered his eyes, and having remained in that posture for a quarter of an hour, as if to recollect himself, he answered to the following effect :

“Before we came to this island we lived yonder under the sun, (pointing with his finger nearly south-west, by which I understood he meant Mexico.) we lived in a fine country where the earth is always pleasant ; there our suns had their abode, and our nation maintained itself for a long time against hostile strangers, who conquered some of our villages in the plains, but never could force us from the mountains. Our nation extended itself along the great water where this large river loses itself ; but as our enemies were become very numerous and very wicked, our suns sent some of our subjects who lived near this river, to examine whether we could retire into the country through which it flowed. The country on the east side being found extremely pleasant, the great sun upon the return of those who had examined it, ordered all his subjects who lived in the plains, and who still defended themselves against the enemies of their country, to remove into this land, here to build a temple, and to preserve the eternal fire.

“A great part of our nation accordingly settled here, where they lived in peace and abundance for several generations ; the great sun and those who had remained with him, never thought of joining us, being tempted to continue where they were by the pleasantness of the country, which was very warm and by the weakness of their enemies who had fallen into civil dissensions by the ambition of one of their chiefs who wanted to raise himself from a state of equality with the other chiefs of the villages and to treat all his people as slaves. During those discords among our enemies, some of them even entered into an alliance with the great sun, who still remained in our old country, that he might assist some other brethren

who had settled on the banks of the great water to the east of the large river, and extended themselves so far on the coast, and among the isles that the great sun did not hear of them, sometimes for five or six years together.

“It was not till after many generations that the great sun came to join us in this part of the country, where from the fine climate and peace we had enjoyed, we had multiplied like the leaves of the trees. Warriors of fire who made the earth tremble had arrived in our old country, and having entered into alliance with our brethren, conquered our ancient enemies; but attempting afterwards to make slaves of our sons, they rather than submit to them left our brethren who refused to follow them, came hither attended only with their slaves.”

“Upon my asking him who those warriors of fire were, he replied that they were bearded white men, somewhat of a brownish colour, who carried arms which started fire with a great noise, and killed at a great distance, that they had likewise heavy arms which killed many men at once, and like thunder made the earth tremble, and that they came from the sun rising in floating villages.

“The ancients of the country, he said, were numerous and inhabited from the western coast of the great water, to the northern countries on this side the sun, and very far up on the same coast beyond the sun. They had a great number of large and small villages, which were all built of stone and in which there were houses large enough to lodge a whole village. Their temples were built with great labour and art, and they made beautiful works of all kinds of materials.

“But ye yourselves, said I, whence are ye come? The ancient speech, he replied, did not tell whence we came; all that we know is, that our fathers, to come hither, followed the sun and came with him from the place where he rises; that they were a long time on the journey, were all on the point of perishing, and were brought into this country without seeking.”

“As to those whom the Natchez,” says Stuart, “call their ancient enemies or the ancients of the country of Mexico, I am of opinion, that they had a different origin from the Natchez and the North American Indians. Their temples, their sacrifices, their buildings, their form of government, and their manner of making war, all denote a people who had transmigrated in a body, and brought with them the arts, the sciences, and the customs of their country. These people had also the art of painting and writing. Their archives consisted of cloths of cotton, whereon they had painted or drawn those transactions, which they thought worthy of being transmitted to posterity.

“It were greatly to be wished that the first conquerors of this new world had preserved to us the figures of those draw-

ings; for by comparing them with the characters used by other nations, we might perhaps have discovered the origin of the inhabitants. The knowledge we have of the Chinese characters, which are rather irregular drawings than characters, would probably have facilitated such a discovery; and perhaps those of Japan would have been found to have greatly resembled the Mexican; for I am strongly of opinion that the Mexicans are descended from one of those nations. In fact, were it the impossibility that some prince in one of those countries, upon failing in an attempt to raise himself to the sovereign power should leave his native country with all his partizans and look for some new land, where after he had established himself, he might drop all foreign correspondence. The easy navigation of the south sea renders the thing probable; and the new map of the eastern bounds of Asia and the western of North America, lately published by *M. De Lisle* makes it still more probable. This map makes it plainly appear, that between the island of Japan or northern coasts of China, and those of America, there are other lands which to this day have remained unknown; and who will take on himself to say, that there is no land because it has not been discovered? I have therefore good grounds to believe that the Mexicans came from China or Japan, especially when I consider their reserved and uncommunicative disposition, which to this day prevails among the people of the eastern parts of Asia. The great antiquity of the Chinese nation, likewise makes it possible that a colony might have gone from there to America, early enough to be looked on as the ancients of the country. As a further corroboration of my conjectures, I was informed by a man of learning in 1752, that in the king's library there is a Chinese manuscript which positively affirms that America was peopled by the inhabitants of *Cereca*.

“*Monacht-ape*, after giving me an account of his travels, spent four or five days visiting among the Natchez, and then returned to take leave of me, when I made him a present of several wares of no value, among which was a concave mirror about two inches and a half diameter, which had cost me three pence and one half-penny: as this magnified the face to four or five inches, its natural size, he was wonderfully delighted with it, and would not have exchanged it for the best mirror in France. After expressing his regret for parting with me, he returned highly satisfied to his own nation.

“*Monacht-ape's* account of the junction of America with the eastern part of Asia, seems confirmed from the following remarkable fact:—“Some years ago the skeletons of two large elephants and two small ones were discovered in a marsh near the Ohio river, and as they were not much consumed it is sup-

posed that the elephants came from Asia not many years before. If we also consider the form of government, and the manner of living among the northern nations of America, there will appear a great resemblance between them and the Tartars or Siberians in the north-east part of Asia.'

"The foregoing story has in it many internal marks of truth. Some of the more prominent of them may be here succinctly stated. Indians who have never seen the ebbing and flowing of the tide, are wonderfully struck with this phenomenon. Many of the inhabitants of Quebec must still remember, that the great deputation of the Indians chiefs from the Mississippi who came to Quebec during the administration of Sir George Prevost, and had in their company the sister of Tecumseth, were often to be seen sitting in a row upon a wharf in the lower town of Quebec, contemplating in silence, and evidently under the deepest impression of awe, the rising and falling of the waters of the St. Lawrence.

"The white men here described correspond in every particular with the Chinese, who, there is reason to believe, held commercial intercourse with the south of Africa a long time before *Vasco de Gama* discovered and doubled the Cape of Good Hope. The Chinese are rather smaller than we are, and have the palest complexion indigenous to Asia. Their muskets are match-locks, and heavier than ours, their powder is inferior in quality.

"The stinking wood mentioned by the Indian chief is probably fristic, yielding a yellow dye, which is the prevailing colour of the garments of the superior classes in China. None of these things could have been known to the Indian chief, and the general tone and character of M. Du Pratz's work excludes the idea of his having fabricated the story."

The learned Winterbotham who wrote the history of North America, confirms us also in the opinion that America was entered from Asia by Kamschatka.

"In the strait," says he, "which separates America from Asia, many islands are found, which probably were the mountains belonging to that tract of land, which we suppose to have been swallowed up by earthquakes; which is made more probable by the multitude of volcanoes which we know of in the Peninsula of Kamschatka. It is imagined, however, that the sinking of that land, and the separation of the two continents, by those great and extraordinary earthquakes mentioned in the histories of the Americans, which formed an era almost as memorable as that of the deluge. The histories of the *Toltecas* fix such earthquakes in the year I *Tecpatl*: but as we know not to what century that belonged, we can form no conjecture

of the time that great calamity happened. If a great earthquake should overwhelm the Isthmus of *Suez*, and there should be at the same time as great a scarcity of historians as there were in the first ages after the deluge, it would be doubted, in 300 or 400 years after, whether Asia had ever been united by that part to Africa; and many would firmly deny it.

“Whether that great event, the separation of the continents, took place before or after the population of America, is as impossible as it is of little moment for us to know; but we are indebted to Cooke and his successor Clerke for settling the long dispute about the point from which it was effected. Their observations prove, that in one place the distance between continent and continent does not exceed thirty miles. This narrow strait has also in the middle two islands which would greatly facilitate the migration of the Asiatics into the new world, supposing that it took place in canoes after the convulsion which rent the two continents asunder. Besides, it may be added, that these straits are, even in summer often filled with ice; and in winter often frozen. In either case mankind might find an easy passage; in the last the way was extremely ready for quadrupeds to cross and stock the continent of America. But, where from the vast expanse of the north eastern world, to fix on the first tribes which contributed to people the new world, now inhabited almost from end to end, is a matter which has drawn forth the most ingenious conjectures.

“As mankind increased in numbers, they naturally protruded one another forward. Wars might be another cause of migrations. There appears no reason why the north Asiatics might not be an *officina virorum*, as well as the Europeans. The overteeming country to the east of the Riphoean mountains, must have found it necessary to discharge its inhabitants: the first great wave of people was forced forward by the next to it, more powerful than itself; successive and new impulses continually arising, short rest was given to that which spread over a more eastern tract; disturbed again and again, it covered fresh regions; at length, reaching the farthest limits of the old world, found a new one, with ample space to occupy unmolested for ages; till Columbus cursed them by a discovery, which brought again new sins and new deaths to both worlds.”

“The inhabitants of the new world,) the diligent antiquary M. Pennant observes,) do not consist of the offspring of a single nation; different people at different periods arrived there; and it is impossible to say that any one is now to be found on the original spot of its colonization. It is impossible with the lights which we have so recently received, to admit that America could receive its inhabitants (at least the bulk of them,) from any other place than eastern Asia. A few proofs

ma  
inh  
the

Scy  
of  
off  
am  
and  
bre  
as d  
peu  
Am  
tend  
at t  
thei  
inve  
abov  
Ant

fello  
of th  
limb  
devo

trans  
man  
Sour  
the s  
head  
to cir  
ance  
these

but f  
is ext

beria  
vario  
becor  
of Ar  
this d  
and p  
New  
the h  
cover

may be added, taken from customs or dresses common to the inhabitants of both worlds; some have been long extinct in the old, but others remain in both in full force.

"The custom of scalping was a barbarism in use with the Scythians, who carried about them at all times this savage mark of triumph. They cut a circle round the neck, and stripped off the skin, as they would that of an ox. A little image found among the Calmuks, of a Tartarian deity, mounted on a horse, and sitting on a human skin, with scalps pendant from the breast, fully illustrates the custom of the Scythian progenitors, as described by the Greek historian. This usage, as the Europeans know by horrid experience, is continued to this day in America. The ferocity of the Scythians to the prisoners extended to the remotest part of Asia. The Kamschadales, even at the time when they were discovered by the Russians, put their prisoners to death by the most lingering and excruciating invention: a practice in full force till this day among the aboriginal Americans. A race of the Scythians were styled *Anthropophagi*, from their feeding on human flesh.

"The people of Nootka Sound still make a repast on their fellow creatures; but what is more wonderful the savage allies of the British Army have been known to throw the mangled limbs of the French prisoners into the horrible cauldron and devour them with the same relish as those of a quadruped.

"The Scythians were said, for a certain time, annually to transform themselves into wolves, and again to resume the human shape. The new discovered Americans about Nootka Sound, at this time, disguise themselves in the dresses made of the skins of wolves and other wild beasts, and wear even the heads fitted to their own. These habits they use in the chase, to circumvent the animals of the field. But would not ignorance or superstition ascribe to a supernatural metamorphosis these temporary expedients to deceive the brute creation?

"In their marches the Kamschadales never went abreast, but followed one another in the same tract. The same custom is exactly observed by the Americans.

"The Tongusi, the most numerous nation resident in Siberia, prick their faces with small punctures with a needle in various shapes; then rub into them charcoal, so that the marks become indelible. This custom is still observed in several parts of America. The Indians on the back of Hudson's bay, to this day, perform the operation exactly in the same manner, and puncture the skin into various figures; as the natives of New Zealand do at present, and as the ancient Britons did with the herb *glastum*, or woad; and the Virginians on the first discovery of that country by the English.

"The Tongusi use canoes made of birch bark, distended



over ribs of wood, and nicely sewed together. The Canadian and many other American nations, use no other sort of boats. The paddles of the Tongusi are broad at each end; those of the people near Cook's river and of Onsiaska, are of the same form.

"In the burying of the dead, many of the American nations place the corpse at full length, after preparing it according to their customs. Other place it in a sitting posture, and lay by it the most valuable clothing, wampum, and other matters. The Tartars and Coriaks did the same as well as the Tongusi and Kamschadales. They all agree in covering the whole with earth, so as to form a tumulus, barrow, or carnedd.

"Some of the American nations hang their dead in trees. Certain of the Tongusi observe a similar custom.

"We can draw some analogy from dress; conveniency in that article must have been consulted on both continents, and originally the materials must have been the same, the skins of birds and beasts. It is singular that the conic bonnet of the Chinese should be found among the people of Nootka.

"In respect to the features and form of the human body, almost every tribe found along the western coast has some similitude to the Tartar and Siberian nations, and still retain the little eyes, small noses, high cheeks and broad faces. They vary in size from the lusty Calmucks to the little Nogains. The internal Americans, such as the five Indian nations, who are tall of body, robust in make, and of oblong faces, are derived from a variety among the Tartars and Siberians themselves.

"The continent which stocked America with the human race poured in the brute creation through the same passage. Very few quadrupeds continued in the Peninsula of Kamschatka; M. Pennant enumerates only twenty-five which are inhabitants of land; all the rest persisted in their migration, and fixed their residence in the new world. Seventeen of the quadrupeds of Kamschatka are found in America; others are common to Tartary or Siberia, having, for unknown causes entirely evacuated Kamschatka, divided themselves between America and the parts of Asia above cited."

The reader is now at liberty to judge whether these observations and researches of modern travellers will serve as incontrovertible proofs of the Asiatic origin of the North American Indians, or as mere conjectures, which are liable to delusion and error. Conjectures, hypothesis and speculative opinions are, it is true, frequently to be considered as unwary guides, and false clues which will not lead us, in a labyrinth of obscurity, and antiquity, to the original source of a nation. In the present inquiry, however, there is no room for suspicion,

because the manners and customs, the intellectual faculties as well as the external appearance and complexion of the Asiatics and the aborigines of North America, have been depicted faithfully and impartially by several persons of veracity and erudition, without reference to the descent of either the aboriginal Americans or those Asiatic tribes which they described, from any particular nation, or country. When, therefore, the characteristic features, as well as the external appearance, bodily frame, and the manners and customs of the American Indians, and certain tribes in Asia coincide so singularly, and differ so considerably from the national peculiarities of the rest of the human race, an ancient consanguinity will at once be acknowledged even by the most incredulous or suspicious. In the absence of true and faithful traditions, records and history, a comparative view of the manners and customs of two nations, and a collation of their languages are the only means by which the antiquary can discover an affinity between them. This we have done with as much fidelity as the importance of the enquiry evidently requires. Our researches, therefore, are founded on the intercourse of modern travellers with the inhabitants of both continents; and the reader will not, we hope, hesitate to believe not only the Asiatic origin of the North American Indians, but their immediate descent from the Siberians, Kamschadales, and Tartars.

---

#### AMERICA PEOPLED BY A MORE CIVILIZED RACE THAN THE PRESENT RED INDIANS.

At what period the continent of America was originally peopled, is a question which has not as yet been satisfactorily proved; in fact all the sources of information which have been hitherto exhibited to the philosophic mind, will not be sufficient to form any probable conjecture on this head. If the geological constitution of America be attentively examined, the opinion that it is a continent more recently formed than the rest of the globe, will not stand.

"The same succession of stony *strata*," says a learned author, "are found no less in the new world than in the old world. At a height superior to mount Blanc, petrified sea shells are found on the summit of the Andes. The fossil bones of elephants, are spread over the equinoctial regions of a continent where living elephants do not exist; and these bones are not found merely in low plains, but in the coldest and most elevated regions of the Cordilleras. There, as well as in the old world, generations of animals long extinct, have preceded

those which now exist on the surface of the earth. There is no reason to believe, that because America has been but recently discovered, that, therefore, it has been but recently peopled. The comparative thinness of its population is no proof to the contrary, for the regions of central Asia are as thinly peopled as the Savannahs of New Mexico and Paraguay. The fact is, that the problem of the first population of most countries, is nearly as difficult to solve as that of America. The reason is plain, because the first population of a country is generally far beyond the period of its history. The problem, therefore, of the population of the new world, is no more within the province of history, than questions on the origin of plants and animals are in that of natural science."

It has been frequently proved beyond the possibility of a doubt, that the remains of a more polished and cultivated people than the present red Indians of North America do still exist in different parts of the western continent. In the absence of these remains the vestiges of civilization which are every year discovered between Lake Ontario and the gulf of Mexico, and even towards the north-west, should sufficiently prove the fact. Mr. Barton, in his *observations on some parts of Natural History, part I.*, has collected the scattered hints of Kalm, Carver, and others, and has added a plan of a regular work, which had been discovered on the banks of the Muskingum, near its junction with the Ohio. These remains are principally stone walls, large mounds of earth, and a combination of these mounds with the walls, suspected to have been fortifications. In some places the ditches and the fortresses are said to have been plainly seen; in others, furrows, as if the land had been ploughed. The mounds of earth are of two kinds; they are artificial tumuli, designed as repositories for the dead; or they are of a greater size for the purpose of defending the adjacent country; and with this view they are artificially constructed, or advantage is taken of the natural eminences, to raise them into a fortification.

The remains near the banks of the Muskingum, are situated about one mile above the junction of that river with the Ohio, and a hundred and sixty miles below fort Pitt. They consist of a number of walls and other elevations of ditches, &c., altogether occupying a space of ground about three hundred perches long, and from about a hundred and fifty to twenty-five or twenty broad. The town, as it has been called, is a large level, encompassed by walls, nearly in the form of a square, the sides of which are from ninety-six to eighty-six perches in length. These walls are, in general, about ten feet in height above the level on which they stand, and about twenty feet in diameter at the base, but at the top they are much

narrower; they are at present overgrown with vegetables of different kinds, and among others, with trees of several feet in diameter. The chasms, or opening in the walls, were probably intended for gate-ways; they are three in number on each side, besides the smaller openings in the angles. Within the walls there are three elevations, each about six feet in height, with regular ascents to them. These elevations considerably resemble some of the eminences already mentioned, which have been discovered near the river Mississippi. This author's opinion is, that the Tolticas, or some other Mexican nation, were the people to whom the mounds and fortifications, which he has described, owe their existence. This conjecture is thought probable, from the similarity of the Mexican fortifications described by the Abbe Clavigero, and other author's to those described by our author; and from the tradition of the Mexicans that they came from the north-west; for, if we can rely on the testimony of late travellers, fortifications similar to those mentioned by Mr. Barton have been discovered as far to the north as Lake Pepin; and we find them, as we approach to the south, even as low as the coasts of Florida.

To enumerate the antiquities of America and the different places where they are found, would only be a repetition of what has already appeared before the public; and these discoveries are evidently so much attended with the exaggeration of enthusiasts, that it would ill become any person, who was not an actual observer, to present to the public what, perhaps, never existed. It is, however, an undeniable fact, that several vestiges of civilization have been found in different parts throughout the western continent, which will at once prove that a people more versed in the arts and sciences than the present North American Indians, inhabited the western continent at some remote period. The venerable Bishop of Mieux, who addressed a series of letters to the Queen of France during his travels in North America, mentions the remains of several well built forts in the country of the Natchez, whom he supposes to be descendants of the Mexicans or the survivors of some nation which must have been somewhat acquainted with the arts, and might have been exterminated by war, pestilence, or famine. "This fortification," he says, "which is large and square, might contain several hundred cabins. The walls which are built of stone, are seven or eight feet high. Round them runs a broad ditch, six feet deep, into which they could, in time of danger, draw the waters of a creek or small river that runs by the town, at the distance of thirty yards. Not far from thence I observed the remains of a tower, built with some taste and art; and on enquiring at the *great temple* of the Natchez, what it

was intended for, I was told by the *priest*, that it was a repository for the dead, or the tomb of their chiefs."

*Monsieur de la Sale*, who first discovered the country of the Natchez, speaks of fortifications, temples, and cultivated fields, where he assures us the plough had been in use, from the fact that, on one occasion, when they were digging to make a well, they discovered the remains of a plough and the bone of an elephant along with it, which from the shape they gave it, could not have been intended for any other purpose than a ploughshare.

Another learned author makes the following observations: "That North America was formerly inhabited by a nation more civilized and more versed in science, than the present, is certain from the late discoveries of M. Verandrier and his companions, who travelled westward from Montreal in order to reach the south sea. When they had traversed many nations, of which no European had any knowledge before, they met with large tracts every where covered with furrows, which had formerly been ploughed; it is to be observed that the people who now inhabit North America, never make use of oxen, horses, or ploughs. In several places they met on the plains and in the woods, great pillars of stone, which to all appearance had been erected by human hands, and with considerable taste. They found a stone, in which was fixed a smaller one, measuring twelve inches by five, on which was an inscription in unknown characters; this they brought to Canada, from whence it was sent to France, to the Count de Maurepas, then Secretary of State."

Count Rosetti found a helmet among the Natchez, made of Tortoise-shell, on which some Asiatic hieroglyphics were engraved. On his return to Italy they were explained by some missionaries who remained several years in China, and purported the *God of War* and the *Great Sun*, or the *Great Chief*. The helmet is still preserved in the Count's collection of antiquities.

L'Abbe de la Ville discovered, during his mission in Ohio, a defensive armour of Tortoise-shell, with inscriptions in the Chinese language. These he sent to Paris and are to be seen in the national museum, with the following observations:—"I have often heard among the present Indians, that, before they arrived in this country from the north-west, they met the remains of a nation whose language they could not understand, and whose external appearance, manners, customs and religion, were not the same with theirs. They represented them as a people who had a different origin, but who, they said, had entered this continent by *Kamschatka*, as they did themselves. This information I have not only acquired from those Indian tribes which I found in Ohio, but also from the Great Sun of

the Natchez, who assured me that he was the descendant of those who were the original proprietors of the American soil, previous to the migration of the barbarous tribes by which he found himself then surrounded. At the same time he told me, that a part of his nation survived the almost utter extermination of his tribes by that barbarous horde, and that they still lived towards the south."

"Innumerable fortifications," says Mons. du Chateau, "are to be found throughout America; but all these vestiges of civilization, and their monuments or pillars and the *tumuli* of the dead are now so overgrown with trees, that it is with some difficulty, they can be discerned."

That several monuments of antiquity are very probably concealed from us, by the overgrowth of the forest cannot at all be denied, when we exhibit to the view of the public, a certain fact which recently came to light in the township of Beverly, county of Halton, Upper Canada. A tumulus was discovered containing the remains of about a thousand Indians, with arms and cooking vessels. This golgotha was, when discovered, overgrown with trees of two hundred years growth. It is, therefore, reasonable to believe that several marks of civilization have, under similar circumstances, escaped our notice.

M. Sinclair, who travelled in North America in the year 1748, has made the following observations respecting the civilization of the aboriginal inhabitants of this continent:—"That architecture and painting," he says, "were known among the ancients of America cannot be denied, when we examine the art which they displayed in building fortifications and towers; and the taste which their paintings in *relievo* exhibit. It would be equally absurd to deny that iron tools were in use; for how could they break and shape into different forms large stones almost as hard as the flint which the present *red men* used as hatchets. But, without any conjecture, we may easily arrive at a conclusion by considering the fact, that the French missionaries found several iron tools and warlike weapons among the Natchez, which they sent home to France with several other Indian antiquities. Some of these weapons and tools are said to resemble, in a striking manner, those of the Coreans, formerly a Chinese colony."

Count Rosetti says, that they are not unlike those in use among the Chinese, according to the observations of the Jesuits, who lived for several years in China. How these tools and weapons have disappeared can easily be accounted for, by supposing that this Asiatic colony, which was undoubtedly more polished than the present Indians, buried along with the dead, as is well known to have been the custom, those tools



and weapons which were dear to them when living. This ridiculous and superstitious custom would certainly contribute, through time, to the utter annihilation of those instruments, which, though evidently in use among them, were not made by them since they arrived in America, but brought along with them from whatever part of Asia they migrated, and consequently the supply could not be otherwise than scanty. The Mexicans, who are supposed, and on very good grounds, to be the descendants of this more civilized race of Indians, were acquainted with the arts when first visited by the Europeans; and this we shall endeavor to prove hereafter.

The following article appeared some time ago, in the *United Service Journal*, in reference to the Greek antiquities which have been recently discovered in South America:—"A recent discovery seems to afford strong evidence that the soil of America was once trodden by one of Alexander's subjects. A few years since there was found, near Monte Video, in South America, a stone with the following words in Greek upon it: 'During the reign of Alexander, the son of Philip, king of Macedon, in the 63rd Olympiad, Ptolemy'—the remainder of the inscription could not be deciphered. This stone covered an excavation, which contained two very ancient swords, a helmet, a shield, and several earthen amphorae of large capacity. On the handle of one of the swords was a portrait of a man, and on the helmet there was sculptured work representing Achilles dragging the corpse of Hector round the walls of Troy. This was a favourite picture among the Greeks. Probably this Ptolemy was overtaken by a storm in the great ocean, as the ancients termed the Atlantic, and driven on the coast of South America. The silence of Greek writers in relation to this event may easily be accounted for, by supposing that on attempting to return to Greece he was lost, together with his crew, and thus no account of his discovery ever reached them."

How these Greek antiquities came to America, we cannot at all conjecture; and it is equally dubious, whether such things have been discovered or not. It would, however, appear presumptuous on our part to contradict it, when we can prove nothing to the contrary.

---

**THE MEXICANS ARE THE REMAINS OF A MORE  
POLISHED NATION THAN THE PRESENT  
NORTH AMERICAN INDIANS.**

It must be observed, however, that the history of nations and the progress of civilization does not, at this moment,

y. This ridi-  
y contribute,  
instruments,  
not made by  
t along with  
l, and conse-  
cantly. The  
ounds, to be  
ndians, were  
Europeans ;

ago, in the  
ek antiquities  
merica :—" A  
that the soil  
er's subjects.  
ideo, in South  
reek upon it :  
king of Ma-  
inder of the  
e covered an  
rds, a helmet,  
capacity. On  
a man, and  
ating Achilles  
Troy. This  
probably this  
cean, as the  
past of South  
ation to this  
that on at-  
her with his  
ached them."  
a, we cannot  
whether such  
however, ap-  
when we can

F A MORE  
PRESENT

y of nations  
is moment,

offer a greater enigma worthy of solution, than the origin of the Toltec, Chichimec, and Aztec tribes, which compose at present those properly denominated Mexicans. Their migrations are not hid in the obscurity of far distant ages, like those of the Celts, the Hellenes, or the Pelasgi, but at a period comparatively modern, when all the movements on the continent of Asia are at least possible to be traced. If we may judge from the number of languages, the number of native tribes must be great. These languages exceed twenty, fourteen of which have grammars and dictionaries. The following are their names :—The Mexican, or Aztec language, spoken by the Toltecs, Chichimecs, Acoluchecs, Nahuatlacs, and Aztecs, thus indicating an identity of origin. This language is the most widely diffused of all the Mexican languages, extending from 37° N. Lat. as far south as the lake of Nicaragua, a distance of more than 1200 miles. The other languages, indicating as many different tribes, are the Otomite, Tarasc, Zapotec, Mistece, Maye, or Yucatan, Totonac, Popolouc, Matlazing, Huaste, Mixed, Caquiquil, Taranmar, Tepehuan, and the Cora. The most part of these languages are, undoubtedly, different from each other ; but the intermixture of one tribe with the other, their separation into new countries, and their formation into different nations, would, inevitably, produce, in the process of time, new and strange languages ; so that if we can trace the origin of the most ancient and universal language, which is the Mexican or Aztec, we may fairly conclude that the Mexican is the common source of all the other dialects, and that the Mexicans must consequently be the progenitors of all the other tribes. Of the five tribes which constitute the present Mexican nation, the Toltecs first made their appearance fifty miles to the east of the city of Mexico, in 648. They declared themselves expelled from a country lying to the north-west of the Rio Gila, and called by them Huehuetlapallan. The date of their emigration is fixed in the Mexican paintings, which describe year by year the events of this migration, which commenced in 544 of our era, or 104 years before their settlement in Mexico ; and it is very remarkable that this epoch of 544, corresponds with the ruin of the dynasty of Tsin, in China, which caused such great commotions among the nations of eastern Asia. About one hundred years after the Toltecs had left Huehuetlapallan, the Chichimecs took possession of it. These were a much more rude and unpolished tribe than the Toltecs, and came from an unknown country, called by them Amaque Mecan, far to the north of Huehuetlapallan, where they had resided for a long time. They took eighteen months to their migration to the ancient seat of the Toltecs. After remaining five centuries in Huehuetlapallan, they migrated to the south

and appeared in Mexico in 1170, and mingled with the Toltecs. The Nahuatlacs made their first appearance from the north, in 1196 in Mexico. The Aztecs, the immediate progenitors of the Mexicans, dwelt in a country called Aztlan, to the north of the Californian gulf in 1160. How far to the north of this parallel Aztlan lay, it is impossible to determine; but we are certain that it lay to the north of the Rio Colorado of California. It is probable that the original abode of the Aztecs, or Aztlan, lay beyond Nootka Sound, between it and Cook's river, especially under the 57th degree of N. Lat. in Norfolk bay and new Cornwall, where the natives have a strong predilection for hieroglyphical paintings, like the Mexicans. After a migration of 56 years, distinguished into three grand periods, the Aztecs arrived in the valley of Mexico in 1216. The first stage of their migration was to the south of the Rio Nabajoa, in 35 deg. N. Lat. and one of the branches of the Colorado. The second stage, was to the south of the Rio Gila, in N. Lat. 33 deg. 30 min., where the ruins of an ancient city, called *Las Casas Grandes*, by the Spaniards, was discovered in 1773, in the midst of a vast and beautiful plain, a league to the south of the Gila. These ruins occupy the space of three square miles. The whole surrounding plain is filled with fragments of Mexican stone ware, beautifully painted in red, white, and blue. The third station was in the vicinity of Yanos, in new Biscay, in N. Lat. 30 deg. 30 min., and 350 miles S. E. of *Las Casas Grandes*. They moved hence to Hueicolhuican, or Culeacai, where the Aztecs, originally composed of six tribes, were abandoned by five of them, namely, the Xochimilcas, Tepanecas, Chalcese, Tlahucas, and Tlascaltecs. The cause of this separation is not known. The remaining tribe was rent into two violent factions, which persecuted each other, and they constructed no more edifices, as at *Las Casas Grandes*. They, however, still travelled together to the south, in order to enjoy the company and protection of their imaginary God. Whenever they stopt an altar was erected to him; and at their departure, they always left behind all their sick, under the charge of others to take care of them. They stopt at Tula nine years, and eleven more in the surrounding parts. At last, in 1216, they arrived at Zumpanco, a considerable city in the vale of Mexico, where they were very kindly received by the Lord of that district, who not only assigned them habitations, but became very much attached to them; and even demanded from them a wife for his son, which was granted; and from this marriage all the Mexican Kings descended.

Restless, however, and dissatisfied with their condition, they still migrated from place to place, along the lake of Tezcuco. In 1245, they arrived at Chapoltepec, within two miles

of the future site of Mexico. Harrassed by the petty kings of Zaltocan, or the Chichimec sovereigns, they retired to a small group of small islands, called Acocolco, at the southern extremity of the lake, where they lived for 52 years in great misery, being compelled to satisfy their wants with aquatic plants, insects, and an unknown species of reptile, called Axolotl. Reduced to slavery by the princes of Acoluacan or Tezcucos, they were again forced to abandon their abode in the midst of the lake, and take refuge on the continent, at T'zapan. The services which they did to their masters, in a war with the Xochimilcas, again procured them their liberty. They established themselves first at Acatzintzintlau, which they called Mexicalzingo, from Mexitli, or Huitzilopochtli, their warlike divinity, corruptly called Vitzliputzli, and next to Iztacalco. Thence they removed to the little islands to the E. N. E. of Chapultepec, in the western end of the lake, in obedience to the order of the oracle of Aztlan. An ancient tradition preserved amongst them said, that the limit, or fatal term of their migration, was to be a place where they should find an eagle sitting on the top of a nopal shrub, the roots of which penetrated the crevices of a rock. This nopal was seen by the Aztecs, in the year 1325, 165 years after their first migration from Aztlan, and 109 years from their first appearance in the vale of Mexico, on a small island, which served for a foundation to the Teocalli, or Teopau, or the house of God, afterwards called by the Spaniards, the great temple of Mexitli. With the building of this rude temple commenced the foundation of the city of Mexico, signifying in the Aztec language, the habitation of the god of war; and with it commenced the dynasty of the Mexican kings, and with it ended the migration of the Aztec tribe.

Such is the information which eminent geographers and the most authentic Spanish writers give us, respecting the early history of the Mexicans. That they were found to be a superior race to the various tribes which inhabited this continent, when America was first visited by Europeans, cannot be denied, if a knowledge of the arts and sciences be a constituent part of refinement and civilization. It is the opinion of all those who have made inquiries after the origin and descent of the Mexicans, or of those vestiges of civilization which are found throughout the continent of America, that they are the descendants of an Asiatic colony from Corea, which was at the time of their migration into America, tributary to the Chinese empire. In corroboration of this fact, we have not only the opinion of learned men, the testimony of Chinese manuscripts, but also a striking similarity of external appearance, manners, and customs, as we shall soon see.

The Mexicans are described as being generally of a good

size, and well proportioned. They have narrow foreheads, black eyes, and regular white teeth, their hair is black, thick, coarse and glossy. They have little or no beard, and no hair upon their arms, thighs or legs. Their skins are a kind of olive, or copper colour. Few among them are deformed, and many of the females are beautiful.

They dress their hair in various fashions, and use different kinds of paints, to make them amiable to their friends, and terrible to their foes. Many of the Mexican tribes cover themselves differently. Those of them who lived in cities when the Spaniards arrived in that country, seem all to have worn particular habits; but this has not been exactly described by the Spanish writers. The habits of the emperor, and his principal chiefs are represented as having been very superb; but it is probable, that fancy has sometimes added to the magnificence.

The Mexicans, as is well known to those Europeans who first visited them, had, undoubtedly, attained an astonishing degree of excellence in several arts. They are considerable proficient in painting and architecture. In painting they sometimes made use of pencils, at other times they used coloured feathers; disposing them into a kind of mosaic work, and displaying in this work an ingenuity and patience, which has never been surpassed by European artists. They cut and polished marble, jewels and precious stones. They constructed different kinds of armour; they wrought mines of gold, silver, wood, and stones; they cut from the quarry stones of prodigious size, and removed them to great distances, to be employed in their buildings; and all this without having the knowledge of any metal harder than iron or copper.

Their public edifices are described as having been of stone and well built. The royal palace opened by thirty gates, into as many streets. The principal front, it is said, was of jasper of different colours, and highly polished. The passage to the royal apartment was through three courts, of the same materials, and equally well finished as the principal court. The floors of those apartments were covered with mats, and they were hung, some of them with cotton cloths and some with hangings made of feathers, disposed into a variety of living figures. The roofs were so artificially constructed, that, although without nails, the planks supported each other.

Cotton manufactures were very common among them; on cloth after it was woven, they painted various figures of men, trees, animals, &c. Instead of needles, they used bones; and the sinews of different animals, they used for thread. These manufactures were conducted chiefly by the women.

They knew something of poetry and music; and songs

set to music, describing the achievements of their ancestors, formed a principal part of their amusements. Their writing was advanced no farther, than to represent transactions by paintings, and hieroglyphic representations. It was in this way that the Spanish invasion was announced to Montezuma.

They were skilled in agriculture, so as to raise considerable quantities of maize. They had some knowledge of gardening and botany; particularly with regard to medicinal plants, of which this country produces great quantities. The Mexican year consisted of 365 days. It was divided into 18 months, of 20 days each; and the five days, which according to this way of reckoning, belonging to no month, were yearly spent in the greatest festivity. This calendar shews, that they paid more attention to the course of the sun, than to that of the moon.

The principal food of the common people was maize ground into flour and formed into cakes. They make use of plantains, cassavi, and many kinds of roots; the flesh of the peccari, deer, and different kinds of venison.

When any considerable business was to be undertaken, they always commenced their consultations with a feast. They had feasts at weddings, and, in short, at every solemnity and every important transaction. At these feasts they had always a plentiful store of their intoxicating liquors. Their drinkings continued sometimes several days, and never ended but with the liquor. The women were not permitted to eat in presence of the men.

Their principal exercises were hunting and fishing, at which they were very expert. They were fond of dancing; this exercise was performed to the music of a reed, with several stops; accompanied by a kind of wooden drum. Their dances were performed sometimes in a circle; at other times, an individual exhibited his performances; and then they consisted chiefly of displays of activity, strength and agility. The women likewise danced and sung, but always separate from the men.

The Mexicans, according to Acosta, were married in their temples by a priest. The ceremony consisted in his demanding of the parties, whether they were willing to accept of each other for husband and wife? Upon their answering in the affirmative, he tied a corner of the woman's veil, to a corner of the man's mantle. In this manner he led them home to the bridegroom's house; the bride went seventimes round a fire, which, for that purpose, had been kindled on the floor; the parties then sat down together by the fireside, and the marriage was looked upon as concluded. The consummation took place on the same night. If the husband was satisfied with his spouse,



he gave an entertainment to her friends, made them presents and sacrificed to the gods. If he suspected her virginity, she was returned to her family, which was to them a considerable reproach.

It does not appear to be certain, whether polygamy was commonly practised or not. Their chiefs, we know, had many wives; but we know that their customs were often different from those of the nation at large. Divorce was allowed by the Mexican law, when the parties could not agree. In this case the husband returned with his wife all the effects which she had received from her friends; of which an account was always kept. Those who had been divorced, were forbidden to come together again under pain of death. This was also the punishment for adultery.

The Mexicans displayed an exemplary diligence in the education of their youth. It was an example of their political sagacity. Public schools were in all places erected in the neighbourhood of their temples, with proper teachers, who were considered as officers of state. These carefully studied the dispositions and parts of the boys committed to their charge, and fitted them for the army, the church, or the state, according as these parts or dispositions directed. They were not permitted to indulge in long sleep. They were forced to live abstemiously; and inured to the most fatiguing exercises. If intended for the army, which they considered as the most honourable of all employments, they were obliged to give proofs of their courage and intrepidity, before they could be enrolled as soldiers. There were also seminaries for the education of females. These were under the direction of respectable matrons, who instructed their pupils in the principles of religion and morality, together with those less dignified domestic accomplishments, which are too frequently neglected in a female education, but which are no less useful in a married state. Both sexes were instructed in music and dancing; they were initiated in the poetry of their country, which with them was not a fruitless amusement.

Their funeral rites had a striking resemblance to those of their less polished neighbours, the North Americans. When a person died, the body was washed, and dressed in his best attire. He was set upright, and formally taken leave of by all his friends and relations. The priests in the neighbourhood attended the body to the place of interment; singing mournful songs and playing melancholy airs on their instruments. They were interred in their ordinary habits. With them were buried their arms, and sometimes gold, silver, necessaries of various kinds, or those things which they had esteemed during life. It is even said, that, along with their great men; several

slaves were put to death and interred, in order to attend their masters in a future state; but this seems not to be sufficiently authenticated. Instead of burying their dead, they are said, sometimes, to have burnt them; and this seems to have been true, chiefly, with regard to their chiefs and princes.

The Government of Mexico, when the Spaniards arrived amongst them, was monarchical; but it is said formerly to have been a republic: frequent factions having endangered the state, it was changed into an elective monarchy. At first, their kings were elected by the whole community; afterwards the elective power was assumed, exclusively, by the kings of Zacuba and Tezcuco, and four princes of the blood. The monarch was always chosen from the royal family. Before the king, who had been elected, could be crowned, he was obliged to go on an expedition against some neighboring nation. At his return, he was met by his nobles, the ministers of state, and chief priests. He was conducted to the temple of the god of war. There he was invested with the imperial robes. In his right hand he received a golden sword; in his left a bow and arrows. The king of Tezcuco, first elector of the empire, set the crown on his head: one of the principal ministers, in the name of the people, congratulated him upon his accession to the crown, and instructed him in the duties which his new dignity enforced upon him.

The king lived in great magnificence and splendour. He ate alone but had always 200 dishes at his table; he was waited on by his principal nobility; and among them he distributed the dishes, after he had taken of them what he wanted. He frequently drank out of a golden goblet; a privilege denied to his greatest vassals.

Justice was administered by proper courts, and judges appointed in every city and province; but from them an appeal could be made to the supreme tribunal, in Mexico, which consisted of twelve judges. Superior, however, to every court of judicature in the kingdom, was the council of state, composed of the six electors of the empire, and generally held in the emperor's presence; and without consulting this council, he seldom resolved on any measure of importance. Treason, murder, sodomy, and adultery, to which some add robbery and theft, were punished with death.

The revenues of the crown were under the cognizance of a council appointed solely for that purpose; this council took charge of these parts of the king's income, arising from the mines, as well as of those taxes in kind, paid by his subjects of every profession. These taxes in the reign of Montezuma, amounted to a third part of every man's profits. The nobles were not subject to the same taxes, but were obliged to main-

tain a certain number of men, to serve in the king's army whenever they were required.

The military affairs of the empire were regulated by a separate council. The profession of a soldier was esteemed the most honourable in the empire, and soldiers every where enjoyed peculiar privileges. Their armies were raised with ease, every cacique, or chief, being obliged, when called upon, to bring a certain number of men into the field. The Spanish writers relate, that Montezuma had thirty vassals, each of whom could bring an hundred thousand men into the field but this calculation has evident marks of exaggeration. Each cacique commanded his own vassals, but under the control of the emperor, who generally conducted his armies in person.

War seems to have been the delight of the nation, and military talents were the surest means of preferment. In order to excite an emulation in courage and warlike skill among the troops, several orders were created similar to the knights of Europe, in the days of chivalry. There were many of these orders, and one in particular, into which none could be admitted, who were not princes, or of royal descent. Their badge was a red ribbon, with which their hair was tied behind; to this were affixed a number of tassels, corresponding to the number of heroic actions performed by the wearer, a new tassel being added for each exploit. To this order the emperor himself belonged.

Their arms were generally bows and arrows; but some Spanish writers have asserted, that iron or steel weapons were also in use among them, some centuries previous to the arrival of Europeans. Of this fact they feel convinced from their having discovered several iron tools and warlike weapons in the tombs of the dead. It has been frequently mentioned by Don Fernandez, that the Mexicans knew the use of iron, although other writers denied the fact. "I do not mean to assert, (says this author,) that the Mexicans ever arrived since their migration to the western continent, at such a proficiency in the use of iron as to be able to mould that metal into warlike weapons or other tools necessary for the promotion of the arts. I know, beyond the possibility of contradiction, that the Mexicans used iron instruments, when it can, as has frequently been done, be proved, that iron or steel swords and other tools of the same metal, have been found buried with the dead." The incredulous ask, how is it, that the Mexicans did not use them when the Spaniards first visited them? They might, as we have already mentioned, when we alluded to the antiquities of North America, disappear, from the prevalent custom, among the different tribes who inhabited this continent, of burying those weapons and other useful tools with the dead. It might

also be asked, why the Mexicans, since their arrival on this continent, did not practise the art of making swords and different other instruments which have been found in the *tumuli* of the dead, both in the northern and southern parts of America. In answer to this question, it is reasonable enough to imagine, that this Asiatic colony who peopled America and brought along with them those iron instruments from Asia, discovered no iron mines in America, whence they might be formed. In battle, they were totally ignorant of the art of disposing their soldiers in battle array. They engaged like a confused crowd, and were, consequently, like a rabble of children, before men skilled in military discipline; and to this circumstance, it has been conjectured, more than to their ignorance of fire arms, the Spaniards owed their easy conquest of the country.

Fear was the basis on which the Mexican worship was founded; and in common with the religion of other pagan nations, that of the ancient Mexicans consisted chiefly in rites of *deprecation*. Whilst figures of destructive animals decorated their temples, fasts, penances, voluntary wounds and tortures, formed the essences of their religious rites.

In the Mexican language *teotl* was a general term for any divinity; and they had an obscure belief of a creator, whom they styled *Ipalnemoani* that is, he by whom we live. But their supreme deity was rather the evil spirit, denominated *klucatecolatol*, or the *rational owl*, whose delight was to injure or terrify. They believed in the immortality of the soul, and a kind of transmigration; the good being transformed into birds, and the bad into creeping animals.

The first *teocalli*, or great temple of Mexico, was composed of wood. The second temple was erected in 1486, and appears to have been of a pyramidal form, 121 feet high, 316 feet at the base, and situated in the midst of a vast inclosure surrounded with walls. It appears to have been a solid mass of earth faced with stone and consisted of five stories. On the summit of this enormous cube, were a great number of altars, covered with wooden cupolas. The point where these cupolas terminated, was elevated 177 feet above the base of the edifice. On the walls of the inclosure were represented many serpents' heads, twisted into various forms. A small chapel stood near the principal entrance, the front of which was adorned with the skulls of those who had been sacrificed. On each side of the greatest square, was a gate, surmounted by the statues of inferior deities; and within the inclosure was the habitation of the priests and servants of the temple. The building was ascended by 120 steps; the top was 40 feet square, paved with jaspers of various colours; round it was a rail of serpentine work, of beautiful black stone, joined with red and white.

ement. Two marble images, sustaining a vast candlestick, stood on each side of the space; and between them a green stone, five spans high, and pointed at the top, on which they extended the victims they intended to sacrifice. These sacrifices were offered to the god, who sat opposite, in a chapel of exquisite workmanship. This god was seated on a throne, sustained by a sphere of a blue colour, representing heaven. From the sides of this sphere proceeded four staffs, terminating in figures of serpents' heads: a twisted serpent was held in the hand of the image; and in his left four arrows behind a shield, which was ornamented with white feathers, in the form of a cross. On its head was a helmet, adorned with feathers of various colours. The countenance of this Mexican moloch was stern and terrific, deformed with two blue hands, one across the nose and cheeks, and the other across the brow. As to the number of victims offered to this sanguinary deity, authors differ. Fernandez says, that those religious edifices of the Mexicans would, from the art and taste which the architecture displayed, be a credit to a more civilized nation than the Mexicans, and that they must have been acquainted with painting, sculpture, and architecture previous to their migration from Asia.

From the foregoing observations on the civilization of the Mexicans, it appears that this great nation had attained a high degree of refinement, previous to the arrival of the Spaniards. The habits of the emperor and his principal chiefs are said by Spanish writers, to have been rich and superb. In several arts they were considerable proficient. Painting and architecture they cultivated with assiduity and success. On agriculture depended chiefly their means of subsistence, although hunting and fishing were their favorite exercises. In educating their children, they offered an example of their political sagacity; because in every district of the empire public schools were erected, in which the youths were fitted for the army, church and state according to their different bents of inclination. In this they excelled even the most refined nations in Europe, where the dispositions and qualifications of the youth are not taken into consideration before they are sent abroad to learn the different professions.

Their government, which was monarchical when the Spaniards arrived among them, was conducted with the greatest prudence and the most refined policy. The ceremonies which attended the king's coronation were, according to the Spaniards, solemn and imposing. In war the Mexicans could boast of military talents, as well as bravery and intrepidity; and in order to excite an emulation in courage and warlike skill among the troops, several orders were created among

them, similar to the knights of Europe, in the days of chivalry. Their fortifications also displayed a degree of military skill which was not likely to be found among the tribes which inhabited the new world. In their religious rites, though a pagan worship, they sometimes displayed some taste with their imposing ceremonies.

That the Natchez, evidently the most civilized of all the present North American tribes were a branch of the great family which constituted the Mexican nation, cannot be doubted, if we pay respect to the traditions of the Natchez themselves, to a similarity of language, manners, habits and customs, as well as their external appearance and religion. If we admit under these circumstances, that a consanguinity exists between the Mexicans and the Natchez, and it cannot be reasonably denied, we must also grant the probability, that the vestiges of civilization, throughout the North American continent, owe their existence to some polished tribes who separated from the Toltecs, Chichimecs, and Aztecs (now the Mexicans,) at the period of their successive migrations, and colonized North America.

This is the most reasonable conjecture that we can form, respecting the most ancient inhabitants of North America. The grounds of this hypothesis are evidently agreeable to reason from the fact that fortifications, offensive weapons, defensive armour, and *tumuli* were found among the Mexicans, much the same as those which indicate the civilization of those who preceded the present red Indians as the inhabitants of the North American soil. It may, indeed, appear to some rather singular that those tribes have totally disappeared in North America, and that they did not impart to the present Indians any of their arts or sciences in painting, architecture and agriculture. If we suppose that the present red Indians entered North America from Siberia or Tartary as a powerful and numerous nation and exterminated with war, or expelled from the country the real aborigines of the American soil, it is not either likely or probable, that the vanquished would teach the conquerors, or that the conquerors would learn from the vanquished.

From the Coreans in Asia, the Toltec, Chichimec and Aztec, that formed the Mexican nation, are very reasonably supposed to have descended. They bear a striking resemblance to the Mexicans in many respects. According to Abernethy, the Coreans have the narrow foreheads, black eyes, and regular white teeth of the Mexicans; their hair is black and thick, and their skins are of copper colour.

Their warriors frequently paint their faces with various colours; and often all those places which are not covered. This they do, in order to appear terrible to their enemies in



time of war. The females paint themselves solely for the sake of adding to their personal attractions.

The Coreans were far from being ignorant of the arts and sciences, for Santini and Abernethy assure us that painting and architecture were, as well fowling, hunting, and fishing, their favourite pursuits. In painting or drawing they frequently used the coloured feathers, which, as we have already observed, were in common use among the Mexicans for the same purpose. The Mexican music, which consisted of a reed and a small wooden drum, was also observed among the Coreans by several travellers, as well as the circular dances so prevalent among all the Indian tribes throughout North and South America. Their other exercises were numerous and consisted merely of displays of activity, strength, and agility. Marriage was celebrated among the Coreans almost in the same manner as that of Mexicans. The priest tied the man's right hand to the woman's left, with a white cord. In this state they walked home from the temple to the bridegroom's house, where the cord was untied by the priest who accompanied them. A feast was then prepared, which ended in dancing, and on the retiring of the married couple. The Mexicans observed a similar ceremony; for the priest tied a corner of the woman's veil, to a corner of the man's mantle. In this manner he led them home to the bridegroom's house.

The Mexican custom of washing the woman and child in a neighbouring stream, whenever she was delivered was also common among the Coreans, who, however left it at the pleasure of the woman herself; and if she declined, it was considered as a mark of impurity.

The funeral rites of the Coreans did not differ materially from those of the North American Indians and Mexicans. Their dead they attired in their finest robes; and along with them they buried those things which they esteemed when living. It has also been observed that it was customary with them to bury with the dead their favourite dogs.

The Coreans engaged in battle with tremendous howlings and shouts, similar to the out-cries of all the Indian tribes of America. Their original arms were bows and arrows; but since a colony arrived there from China swords and other iron weapons were introduced.

The religion of the Coreans, like that of every rude nation, was founded upon fear, and it consisted chiefly in rites of *deprecation*. Fasts, penances, tortures, and voluntary wounds formed the essences of their religion. That of the Mexicans corresponded in all its rites and ceremonies, with that of the Coreans. These Asiatics, as well as almost all the Indian tribes of America worshipped two particular divinities; the

one they considered to be a *benevolent spirit*, and the other *malevolent*. They had also a great many inferior deities, whom they revered as *tutelary gods*, or *guardians*.

In these, and in several other national peculiarities the Mexicans and the Coreans coincide so strikingly, that the antiquary will, at once, be satisfied with the identity of people; besides the traditions of the Mexicans, or rather their records in painting confirm the Chinese manuscripts which Santini has translated into the Italian language. According to him, the Kitans, in the second year of the dynasty of Tsin, emperor of China, declared war against the Coreans. The Kitans were a powerful nation, who inhabited eastern Tartary and dwelt to the north and north-east of the province of Pecheli, in China. Without detailing the particularities of this campaign, so minutely related by the Italian antiquary, we shall merely say, that the Coreans were subdued by the Kitans, who afterwards exercised such tyranny over the vanquished, that the Coreans undertook a sea voyage in order to establish a colony in some distant land. The course which they pursued was towards the north-east. During a voyage of nine weeks they passed by several islands, and arrived in a country, whose bounds they could not discover. This land Santini, very reasonably, supposes to be America. This information, of which we have only given the substance, is certainly very interesting, and tends to prove beyond the possibility of a doubt, that the Coreans were the first that visited the new world from Asia. It was communicated in Corea by prince Ala-couli, on his return to Corea; and thence it was transmitted to China, where the manuscript is still preserved.

FINIS.

OF  
S  
H  
H  
T  
M  
J  
A  
D  
P  
C  
J  
S  
J  
R  
J  
G  
J  
J  
—  
A  
D  
J  
J  
J  
R  
R  
—  
G  
J  
D  
J  
E  
D  
W  
J  
J  
R  
J  
J  
H  
W

# LIST

## OF THE NAMES OF SUBSCRIBERS TO THE FOREGOING WORK.

Sir F. B. Head,  
Sir John Colborne,  
Hon. D. Cameron,  
Hon. Wm. Allan,  
Hon. J. H. Dunn,  
T. D. Morrison,  
MacNab of MacNab,  
James Small,  
Allan Chisholm,  
Donald Cameron,  
Peter McDougall,  
Charles C. Small,  
J. H. Price,  
Samuel P. Jarvis,  
John Radenhurst,  
R. B. Miller,  
J. M. Taylor,  
G. Burnett,  
John Urquhart,  
J. McGillis,  
— Richardson,  
Alexander Chisholm,  
D. Chisholm,  
John Murchison,  
John Murchison,  
J. POUND,  
Rev. P. McDonough,  
Rev. — Gibney,  
— Scollard,  
G. T. Dennison,  
John Craig,  
Dennis R. Bradley,  
J. M. Manman,  
E. McElderry,  
Daniel Sullivan,  
Walter H. Griffith,  
J. Rogers,  
James Foster,  
Robert Blovins,  
J. Eastwood,  
J. Lindsay,  
Hugh Trainor,  
W. Keavey,

T. Mills,  
Thomas Thompson,  
James Smith,  
T. Daniel,  
B. J. Williams,  
C. Warmoll,  
T. Parson,  
W. G. Read,  
W. Wallis,  
George Underhill,  
Thomas Riddell,  
Thos. M. Manning,  
John C. Schotfield,  
James Salmon,  
Michael Kelly,  
Thomas Moore,  
William M. Mitchell,  
— Spragge,  
Thomas Armstrong,  
James Kerr,  
George Armstrong,  
M. Armstrong,  
Robert Emery,  
Michael Kane,  
William Ware,  
W. Gilmor,  
J. Scarlett,  
A. Foulds,  
J. Powell,  
Robert Davidson,  
Robert Walker,  
P. Burke,  
Charles Hardy,  
James A. Musson,  
Thomas Edmund,  
Benjamin Gollands,  
Charles Smith,  
Thomas Smith,  
James Mathers,  
P. W. Wrenard,  
M. De la Haye,  
J. James,  
C. Baker,

F. T. Billings,  
E. Cooper,  
Wm. Hughes,  
— Platt,  
— Ryan,  
T. Bell,  
John Stevenson,  
— Weir,  
— Thomson,  
G. Nicholls,  
Donald Forbes,  
Duncan McDonell,  
Samuel McCardle,  
John McCardle,  
John Hutton,  
W. M. Benns,  
Donald Campbell,  
Jacob Klieser,  
A. Kendrick,  
David D. C. Porter,  
Henry Lewis,  
A. J. Williamson,  
C. Veltanair,  
Conrad Varmatter,  
John Tiffey,  
James McGuire,  
John McGuire,  
James Dixon,  
W. Callaghan,  
Dr. McCormack,  
Hon. Alex. McDonell,  
John Kline,  
John Hay,  
William Lindsay,  
Thomas Thomas,  
Richard Scora,  
Samuel Bayne,  
John Chipperfield,  
H. B. Fortier,  
J. G. Baird,  
Dr. Sullivan,  
— Eldunny,  
John Elliott,

*Subscribers Names.—Continued.*

W. Church,  
 J. N. Robinson,  
 Wm. Bergin,  
 C. Currie,  
 Patrick Hartney,  
 James Beam,  
 Owen Miller & Co.  
 James Lesle,  
 John S. Smith,  
 David Jones,  
 William McGuire,  
 Timothy Daily,  
 John Jones,  
 David Jones,  
 John Munn,  
 Angus McVicar,  
 James Brunner,  
 William Hudson,  
 James Shannon,  
 Maurice Malone,  
 T. G. Brown,  
 J. P. Turner,  
 J. R. Armstrong,  
 C. Murray,  
 John Grantham,  
 George Munro,  
 W. B. Jarvis,  
 J. W. Hutcheson,  
 D. Thompson,  
 N. M. Bettis,  
 Jacob Latham,  
 Caleb Humphrey,  
 James McMillan,  
 H. McMurtrie,  
 H. G. Benn,  
 S. Washburn,  
 A. Rennie,  
 M. Z. Phipps,  
 John Mortson,  
 Joseph Purnell,  
 Peter Vannatta,  
 John Lyon,  
 Andrew Todd,  
 William Higgins,  
 John Laukton,  
 James Williamson,  
 J. McGilvray,  
 William Burns,

John McIntosh,  
 John Lysayht,  
 Thomas Glasco,  
 A. Shade,  
 Josiah Kendrick,  
 John Holister,  
 Jonathan Hugill,  
 Alex. McGregor,  
 W. McCaskill,  
 K. McCaskill,  
 D. McKenzie.  
 John McKeuzie,  
 Hon. R. B. Sullivan,  
 Dr. Baldwin,  
 Capt. Baldwin,  
 Thomas Milburn,  
 Paul Bishop,  
 John Armstrong,  
 John Earls,  
 Thomas Summers,  
 James Trotter,  
 James Williamson,  
 W. McCrackan,  
 — Moore,  
 P. M. Heward,  
 William Bennie,  
 James F. Smith,  
 John Harley,  
 John Cameron,  
 — McDonald,  
 Hugh Heward,  
 Dr. King,  
 James King,  
 Duncan McLeod,  
 James Hawthorn,  
 Thomas McMurphy,  
 Alexander Munro,  
 Daniel Morrison,  
 William McIntosh,  
 Robert McIntosh,  
 William Flock,  
 William Campbell,  
 George Thomson,  
 Daniel Mosher,  
 Samuel Johnson,  
 Mrs. Pollock,  
 William Hunter,  
 Henry Gilbertson,

Stillwill Willson,  
 John Murray,  
 A. P. McDonald,  
 Ronald McDonald,  
 John McKay,  
 James Baby,  
 John J. Evans,  
 Peter McVean,  
 Robt. Richardson,  
 James B. Sutherland,  
 Donald Ross,  
 Col. Fitzgibbon,  
 John Cameron,  
 Francis Logan,  
 Alexander Ross,  
 M. McLellan,  
 Andrew Mercer,  
 Charles Sloan,  
 A. Badenach,  
 Dr. Widmer,  
 I. W. Brent,  
 L. T. Auld,  
 P. Handy,  
 G. Henderson,  
 — Hafferty,  
 G. Sinclair,  
 James Colcleugh,  
 Capt. Holcott,  
 John Cameron,  
 D. Cameron,  
 Kenneth Cameron,  
 W. Spragge,  
 J. G. Spragge,  
 — Grant,  
 James Colquhoun,  
 J. McDonald,  
 Sidney S. Hamilton,  
 J. M. A. Cameron,  
 John Roddy,  
 A. Stewart,  
 John Robinson,  
 M. Caldwell,  
 James Ramsay,  
 W. L. Stewart,  
 Robert Ford,  
 Peter McArthur,  
 Thomas Elliott,  
 Thomas Gray.

Willson,  
Murray,  
McDonald,  
McDonald,  
McKay,  
Baby,  
Evans,  
McVean,  
Richardson,  
B. Sutherland,  
Ross,  
itzgibbon,  
Cameron,  
s Logan,  
der Ross,  
Lellan,  
v Mercer,  
s Sloan,  
lenach,  
idmer,  
Brent,  
Auld,  
dy,  
nderson,  
erty,  
clair,  
Colcleugh,  
Holcott,  
Cameron,  
neron,  
h Cameron,  
ragge,  
pragge,  
nt,  
Colquhoun,  
Donald,  
S. Hamilton,  
A. Cameron,  
Loddy,  
wart,  
Robinson,  
dwell,  
Ramsay,  
Stewart,  
Ford,  
McArthur,  
s Elliott,  
s Gray.



